# FORD **TRANSIT Owner's Manual**

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3796en 202110 20211109130009

# Table of Contents


## Introduction

About This Publication ....19
Using This Publication ....19
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication ....19

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle ....20

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy - 2.0L EcoBlue ....23
Data Privacy - Electric Motor ....24
Service Data ....25
Event Data ....25
Settings Data ....26
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem ....26
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....26
Emergency Call System Data - 2.0L EcoBlue ....27
Emergency Call System Data - Electric Motor ....27

## Environment

Protecting the Environment ....28

## Visual Search

Steering Wheel ....29
Instrument Panel - LHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC ....29
Instrument Panel - LHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....31
Instrument Panel - RHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....32
Instrument Panel - RHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC ....33

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions ....35
Child Restraint Anchor Points ....36
Child Restraints ....38
Booster Seats ....41
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles Without: Power Sliding Door ....42
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door ....42
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting ....43

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions ....44
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts ....44
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy ....44
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height ....45
Seatbelt Reminder ....45
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting ....46

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work ....47
How Do the Side Airbags Work ....47
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work ....48
Airbag Precautions ....48
Passenger Airbag Indicators ....49
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off ....49
Airbags – Troubleshooting ....50

## Pedestrian Alert System - Electric Motor

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System ....51
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting ....51

## Emergency Assistance

What Is Emergency Assistance ....52
How Does Emergency Assistance Work ....52




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Emergency Call Requirements .....52
Emergency Call Limitations .....53

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....55
Opening and Closing the Flip Key .....55
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....55
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....56
Locating Your Vehicle .....56
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition .....56
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....57
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....59
Programming the Remote Control .....59
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....59
Frequently Asked Questions .....60

## MyKey™

What Is MyKey .....61
MyKey Settings .....61
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition .....62
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....62
Programming a MyKey .....62
Clearing All MyKeys .....62
Checking MyKey System Status .....63
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....63
MyKey – Troubleshooting .....63

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....67
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....69
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function .....69
Autounlock .....70
Autolock .....70
Autorelock .....71
Door Lock Indicators .....71
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....71
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....71

## Sliding Door - Vehicles Without: Power Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions .....72
Opening the Sliding Door .....72
Closing the Sliding Door .....72

## Sliding Door - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions .....74
Opening the Sliding Door .....74
Closing the Sliding Door .....75
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement .....76
Resetting the Power Sliding Door .....76
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting .....77

## Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry .....79
Keyless Entry Limitations .....79
Keyless Entry Settings .....79
Using Keyless Entry .....80
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....80

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....81
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....81
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings .....82
Security – Troubleshooting .....83



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Power Running Boards - Vehicles With: Power Running Boards

Power Running Board Precautions .....85
Power Running Board Settings .....85
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards .....85
Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting .....85

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....86
Locking the Steering Wheel .....86

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....87
Autowipers .....87
Checking the Wiper Blades .....88
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....88
Washers .....88
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....89

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....90
Headlamps .....90
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....91
Autolamps .....92
Exterior Lamps .....92
Automatic High Beam Control .....94
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....96

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus .....97
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus/Van .....97
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus/Van .....97
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus .....97
Interior Lamp Function .....98
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....98
Cargo Lamps - Van .....98

## Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows .....99
Window Bounce-Back .....99
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows .....100
Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows .....100

## Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions .....101
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror .....101
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....101

## Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....102
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors .....102
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors .....102

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue .....104
Instrument Cluster Overview - Electric Motor .....105
Tachometer - 2.0L EcoBlue .....105
Speedometer .....105
Fuel Gauge - 2.0L EcoBlue .....105
Vehicle Range Display - Electric Motor .....106
High Voltage Battery Gauge - Electric Motor .....106
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - 2.0L EcoBlue .....107




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps ....107
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps ....107
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators ....109
Instrument Cluster Indicators ....110

## Instrument Cluster Display - 2.0L EcoBlue

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls ....112
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu ....112
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display ....112
Personalized Settings ....112
Fuel Economy Display ....113

## Instrument Cluster Display - Electric Motor

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls ....114
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu ....114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display ....114
Personalized Settings ....114
What Is the Trip Summary ....115
Vehicle Charging Status ....115

## Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer ....116
Resetting the Trip Computer ....116
Resetting the Individual Trip Values ....116
Configuring the Trip Computer ....116
Trip Data ....116

## Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start ....117
Remote Start Limitations - 2.0L EcoBlue ....117
Remote Start Limitations - Electric Motor ....117
Enabling Remote Start ....117
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - 2.0L EcoBlue ....117
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Electric Motor ....118
Remote Start Settings ....118

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off ....119
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off ....119
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off ....119
Switching Defrost On and Off ....119
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off ....119
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off ....120
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off ....120
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off ....120
Setting the Blower Motor Speed ....120
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off ....120
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off ....120
Setting the Temperature ....121
Directing the Flow of Air ....121
Auto Mode ....121
Climate Control Hints - 2.0L EcoBlue ....123
Climate Control Hints - Electric Motor ....124



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off ....126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off ....126
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off ....126
Switching Defrost On and Off ....126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off ....126
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off ....126
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off ....127
Setting the Blower Motor Speed ....127
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off ....127
Setting the Temperature ....127
Directing the Flow of Air ....127
Climate Control Hints ....128

## Rear Passenger Climate Control

Setting the Blower Motor Speed ....129
Directing the Flow of Air ....129

## Auxiliary Heater

What Is the Auxiliary Heater ....130
Auxiliary Heater Precautions ....130
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off ....130
Auxiliary Heater Indicators ....130

## Parking Heater

What Is the Parking Heater ....131
Parking Heater Precautions ....131
Parking Heater Limitations ....131
Parking Heater Settings ....131
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control ....132
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators ....133
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery ....133
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting ....135

## Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions ....136
Sitting in the Correct Position ....136
Manual Seats ....137
Power Seats ....140
Heated Seats ....142

## Rear Seats

Manual Seats ....144

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System ....146
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work ....146
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions ....146
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations ....146
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off ....146
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators ....147
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings ....147

## USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports ....148
Playing Media Using the USB Port - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....148
Charging a Device ....149




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet ....150
Power Outlet Precautions ....150
Locating the Power Outlets ....150
Power Outlet Indicators ....151
Switching the Rear Power Outlet On and Off ....151
Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve Limit ....152
Resetting Ground Fault Detection ....152
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting ....153

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet ....155
Power Outlet Precautions ....155
Power Outlet Limitations ....155
Locating the Power Outlets ....155
Power Outlet Indicators ....155

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet ....157
Power Outlet Precautions ....157
Locating the Power Outlets ....157

## Cigar Lighter

Cigar Lighter Precautions ....158
Using the Cigar Lighter ....158

## Storage

Bottle Holders ....159
Cup Holders ....159
Overhead Storage ....159
Front Door Storage ....160
Under Seat Storage ....160
Rear Overhead Storage ....161
Device Holder ....161

## Starting and Stopping the Engine - 2.0L EcoBlue

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions ....163
Ignition Switch ....163
Push Button Ignition Switch ....164
Starting the Engine ....164
Stopping the Engine ....167
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start ....169
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start ....170
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting ....170

## Starting and Powering Off - Electric Motor

Starting and Powering Off Precautions ....174
Starting the Vehicle ....174
Powering Off ....174
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off ....174
Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With: Push Button Start ....175
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position ....175
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting ....176

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle ....177
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work ....177
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics ....177




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What Is Auto-Start-Stop ....178
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions ....178
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC ....178
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....178
Stopping the Engine ....178
Restarting the Engine ....178
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators ....180
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning ....180
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting ....180

## Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop ....182
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions ....182
Auto-Start-Stop Settings ....182
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off ....182
Stopping the Engine ....182
Restarting the Engine ....183
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators ....183
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning ....183
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting ....183

## Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop ....185
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions ....185
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC ....185
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 ....185
Stopping the Engine ....185
Restarting the Engine ....185
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators ....187
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting ....187

## Fuel and Refueling - 2.0L EcoBlue

Fuel and Refueling Precautions ....189
Fuel Quality ....190
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel ....190
Running Out of Fuel ....190
Refueling ....192
Fuel Tank Capacity ....193
Fuel Consumption Regulations ....194
Fuel Consumption Figures ....194
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings ....195
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting ....195

## Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter ....196
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work ....196
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions ....196
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements ....197
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration ....197
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting ....199

## Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System ....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions ....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements ....201




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines ....201
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank ....202
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level ....203
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status ....204
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption ....204
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification ....204
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting ....204

## High Voltage Battery - Electric Motor

What Is the High Voltage Battery ....207
High Voltage Battery Precautions ....207
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery ....207
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery ....208
Energy Consumption Figures ....208
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting ....208

## Charging Your Vehicle - Electric Motor

What is AC Charging ....209
What is DC Charging ....209
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions ....209
Charging Equipment ....209
Locating the Charge Port ....220
Charge Port Indicators ....220
AC Charging ....221
DC Charging ....228
Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences ....232
Using FordPass and Charging ....237
Charging Your Vehicle Hints ....237
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols ....237
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting ....239

## Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions ....241
Shifting Into Reverse ....241
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators ....241
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level ....241
Clutch Fluid Specification ....241
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting ....242

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions ....243
Automatic Transmission Positions ....243
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission ....244
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators ....244
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission ....244
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission ....245
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission ....245
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission ....246
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission ....247
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting ....247

## All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work ....248
All-Wheel Drive Precautions ....248
All-Wheel Drive Limitations ....248



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....248

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....249
Anti-Lock Braking System .....249
Brake Over Accelerator .....249
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....249
Checking the Brake Fluid .....249
Brake Fluid Specification .....250
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....250

## Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake .....252
Releasing the Parking Brake .....252
Parking Brake Audible Warning .....252
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....252

## Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Drop Down Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake .....253
Releasing the Parking Brake .....253
Parking Brake Audible Warning .....253
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....253

## Parking Brake - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Conventional Mechanical Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake .....254
Releasing the Parking Brake .....254
Parking Brake Audible Warning .....254
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....254

## Parking Brake - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Drop Down Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake .....255
Releasing the Parking Brake .....255
Parking Brake Audible Warning .....255
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....255

## Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission .....256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....256
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....257
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....257
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....257
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....257
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....257

## Reverse Braking Assist - Vehicles With: Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Braking Assist .....259
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work .....259
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions .....259
Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off .....260
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist .....260
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators .....260
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting .....261



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....263
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....263
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....263
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....263

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....264
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....264
Using Auto Hold .....264
Auto Hold Indicators .....264

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....266
How Does Traction Control Work .....266
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....266
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....266
Traction Control Indicator .....266
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....267

## Stability Control

What Is Stability Control .....268
How Does Stability Control Work .....268
Switching Stability Control On and Off .....268
Stability Control Indicator .....268

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions .....269
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....270
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....270
Rear Parking Aid .....270
Front Parking Aid .....271
Side Parking Aid .....272
Parking Aid Indicators .....273
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....273

## Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera .....275
Rear View Camera Precautions .....275
Rear View Camera Limitations .....275
Locating the Rear View Camera .....276
Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....276
Rear View Camera Settings .....277

## 360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera .....279
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work .....279
360 Degree Camera Precautions .....279
360 Degree Camera Limitations .....279
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras .....279
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines .....280
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off .....281
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View .....281

## Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist .....282
Active Park Assist Precautions .....282
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....282
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....282
Entering a Parallel Parking Space .....283
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space .....283
Exiting a Parking Space .....284
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting .....284

## Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control .....286
Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....286
Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....286
Canceling the Set Speed .....286




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Resuming the Set Speed .....287
Cruise Control Indicators .....287

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work .....288
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....288
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....289
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....291
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....291
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....291
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....292
Canceling the Set Speed .....293
Resuming the Set Speed .....293
Overriding the Set Speed .....293
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....293
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....294
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control .....294
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....295

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....298
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....298
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....298
Drive Modes - 2.0L EcoBlue .....298
Drive Modes - Electric Motor .....298
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....299

## Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach .....300
How Does Eco Coach Work .....300
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work .....300
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level .....300
How Does Trip Summary Work .....300
Viewing the Trip Summary .....300

## Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode .....301
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off .....301
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode .....301
Trip Summary .....301
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators .....301

## Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information .....302
Local Hazard Information Precautions .....302
Enabling Local Hazard Information - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....302
Checking Local Hazard Information Status .....302

## Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work .....303
Speed Limiter Precautions .....303
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off .....303
Setting the Speed Limit .....303
Changing the Set Speed Limit .....303
Canceling the Set Speed Limit .....303
Resuming the Set Speed Limit .....303
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit .....304
Speed Limiter Indicators .....304
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings .....304

## Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....305



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work ....305
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions ....305
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering ....305
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering ....305
Setting the Speed Limit ....306
Changing the Set Speed Limit ....306
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance ....306
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering ....306
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering ....306
Resuming the Set Speed Limit ....306
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit ....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators ....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings ....307
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter ....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting ....307

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System ....308
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work ....308
Lane Keeping System Precautions ....308
Lane Keeping System Limitations ....309
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off ....309
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode ....309
Lane Keeping System Settings ....309
Alert Mode ....310
Aid Mode ....310
Alert and Aid Mode ....311
Lane Keeping System Indicators ....311
Blind Spot Assist ....311
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage ....313
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting ....316

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System ....317
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work ....317
Blind Spot Information System Precautions ....317
Blind Spot Information System Limitations ....317
Blind Spot Information System Requirements ....318
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off ....318
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors ....318
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage ....319
Blind Spot Information System Indicators ....320
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting ....320

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert ....322
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work ....322
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions ....322
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations ....322
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off ....323
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors ....323
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage ....323
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators ....324



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting ....324

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist ....325
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work ....325
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work ....326
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions ....326
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations ....326
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control ....327
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control ....327
Distance Indication ....328
Distance Alert ....328
Automatic Emergency Braking ....328
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting ....329

## Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert ....331
How Does Driver Alert Work ....331
Driver Alert Precautions ....331
Switching Driver Alert On and Off ....331
Resetting Driver Alert ....331
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting ....332

## Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition ....333
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work ....333
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions ....333
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations ....333
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators ....333
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance ....334
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting ....334

## Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition ....335
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work ....335
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions ....335
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations ....335
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators ....335
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning ....336
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance ....336
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting ....336

## Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert ....337
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work ....337
Wrong Way Alert Precautions ....337
Wrong Way Alert Limitations ....337
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off ....337
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting ....338

## Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions ....339
Roof Rack ....339

## Load Bed

Load Bed Precautions ....341
Accessing the Load Bed ....341
Load Bed Step ....343

## Rear Cargo Area

Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points ....345



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....346

## Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Trailer Tow

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....347
Towing a Trailer Limitations .....347
Loading Your Trailer .....347
Trailer Towing Hints .....348
Towing Weights and Dimensions .....348

## Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work .....353
Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....353

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....354
Driving on Snow and Ice .....354
Breaking-In .....354
Driving Economically .....354
Driving in Special Conditions .....355
Electric Vehicle .....356
Driving Through Shallow Water - 2.0L EcoBlue .....356
Driving Through Shallow Water - Electric Motor .....357
Floor Mats .....358

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....359
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....359
Post-Crash Alert System .....363
Post Impact Braking .....364
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....364
Accessing the Emergency Exit - Bus .....365
Recovery Towing .....365
Fail-Safe Cooling - 2.0L EcoBlue .....366

## Towing Your Vehicle - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....368

## Towing Your Vehicle - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....369
Emergency Towing .....369

## Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....370
Emergency Towing .....370

## Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit .....371
Storing a Warning Triangle .....371

## Fuses

Fuse Precautions .....372
Under Hood Fuse Box .....372
Interior Fuse Box .....376
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....382
High Current Fuse Box .....385
Identifying Fuse Types .....386
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....387

## Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions .....388
Opening and Closing the Hood .....388
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, AWD/RWD/LHD .....389
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, FWD/LHD .....390
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, AWD/RWD/RHD .....391




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, FWD/RHD .....392
Under Hood Overview - Electric Motor .....393
Engine Oil - 2.0L EcoBlue .....394
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - 2.0L EcoBlue .....395
Engine Cooling Fan - 2.0L EcoBlue .....396
Coolant .....396
12V Battery .....400
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - 2.0L EcoBlue .....404
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Electric Motor .....405
Adjusting the Headlamps .....406
Exterior Bulbs .....408
Interior Bulbs .....420
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - 2.0L EcoBlue .....423

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior .....424
Cleaning the Interior .....425
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....427
Waxing Your Vehicle .....428

## Wheel and Tire Information

Using Summer Tires .....429
Using Winter Tires .....429
Using Snow Chains .....429

## Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures .....431
Inflating the Tires .....431
Tire Pressure Specifications - Van .....431
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus .....438
Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....440
Tire Rotation .....440

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....442
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions .....442
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....442
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components .....442
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....443

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....445
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....445
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....445
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....445
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....446
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....446

## Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire - 2.0L EcoBlue .....448
Changing a Flat Tire - Electric Motor .....457
Wheel Nuts .....464

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Bus/Kombi/Van .....466
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab/ Chassis Double Cab .....467
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue .....469
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue .....470



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Electric Motor .....470
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.0L EcoBlue .....471
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue .....472
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Electric Motor .....473
Washer Fluid Specification .....473
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue .....474
Brake Fluid Specification .....475

## Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number .....476
Vehicle Identification Plate .....476

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....478
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....478
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....478
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....478
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....479
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....479

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....481
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....481
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....482
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....482
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting .....483

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....484
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....484
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....484
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....484
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....484
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source .....484
Adjusting the Volume .....485
Setting a Memory Preset .....485
Muting the Audio .....485
Scrolling Through Menu Items - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC .....485
Scrolling Through Menu Items - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....485
Selecting a Menu Item - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC .....486
Selecting a Menu Item - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....486
Adjusting the Sound Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC .....486
Adjusting the Sound Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....486
Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles Without: SYNC .....487
Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....487
Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....487
AM/FM Radio .....487
Switching the Display On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC .....488
Switching the Display On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....489

## Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions .....490
Center Display Limitations .....490



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Status Bar ....490
Information On Demand Screen ....491

**Voice Interaction**
What is Voice Interaction ....492
Setting the Wake Word ....492
Beginning a Voice Interaction ....492
Voice Interaction Examples ....492

**Phone**
Phone Precautions ....494
Connecting Your Phone ....494
Phone Menu ....494
Making and Receiving a Phone Call ....496
Sending and Receiving a Text Message ....497
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off ....498

**Bluetooth®**
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device ....499
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® ....499

**Apps**
App Precautions ....500
App Requirements ....500
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device ....500
Enabling Apps on an Android Device ....500
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off ....501
Switching Android Auto On and Off ....501

**Navigation**
Accessing Navigation ....502
Navigation Map Updates ....502
Adjusting the Map ....502
Live Traffic ....502
Setting a Destination ....502
Waypoints ....503
Route Guidance ....503
Trailer Towing Navigation ....504

**Driver Identification**
How Does Driver Identification Work ....505
Signing In as a Driver ....505
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting ....505

**Vehicle System Updates**
Updating the Vehicle Systems Wirelessly ....506
Performing a Master Reset ....507

**Customer Information**
Rollover Warning ....508
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment ....508
Declaration of Conformity ....508
REACH ....508
Replacement Parts Recommendation ....509
Mobile Communications Equipment ....509
End User License Agreement ....510
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle ....535

**Appendices**
Electromagnetic Compatibility ....536



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

**Note:** *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

**Note:** *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

### Features and Options

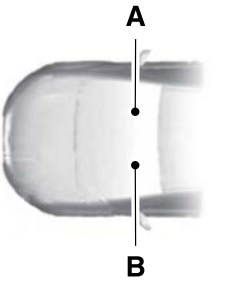
**Note:** *This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.*

### Illustrations

**Note:** *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

### Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.




A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

## WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

### Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

### Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Air conditioning system

Air conditioning system lubricant type

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Brake system

Brake system

Cabin air filter

Check fuel cap

Child safety door lock or unlock

Child seat lower anchor

Child seat tether anchor

Cruise control

Do not open when hot

Electric Parking brake

Engine air filter

Engine coolant

Engine coolant temperature

Engine oil

Explosive gas

Fan warning

Fasten seatbelt

Flammable

Airbag

Front fog lamps

Fuel pump reset



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Fuse compartment

Hazard flashers

Heated rear window

Windshield defrosting system

Interior luggage compartment release

Jack

Keep out of reach of children

Lighting control

Low tire pressure warning

Maintain correct fluid level

Note operating instructions

Horn control

Panic alarm

Parking aid

Passenger airbag activated

Passenger airbag deactivated

Power steering fluid

Power windows front/rear

Power window lockout

Requires registered technician

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

See Service Manual

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Side airbag

Shield the eyes

Stability control

Hill descent control

Trail control

Windshield wiping system

Windshield wash and wipe



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## DATA PRIVACY - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

### Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## DATA PRIVACY - ELECTRIC MOTOR

**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

### Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

### Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See* ***Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network*** *(page 478).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 500).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - 2.0L ECOBLUE

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - ELECTRIC MOTOR

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the battery shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You can take significant steps toward protecting the environment with correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit *www.sustainability.ford.com*.



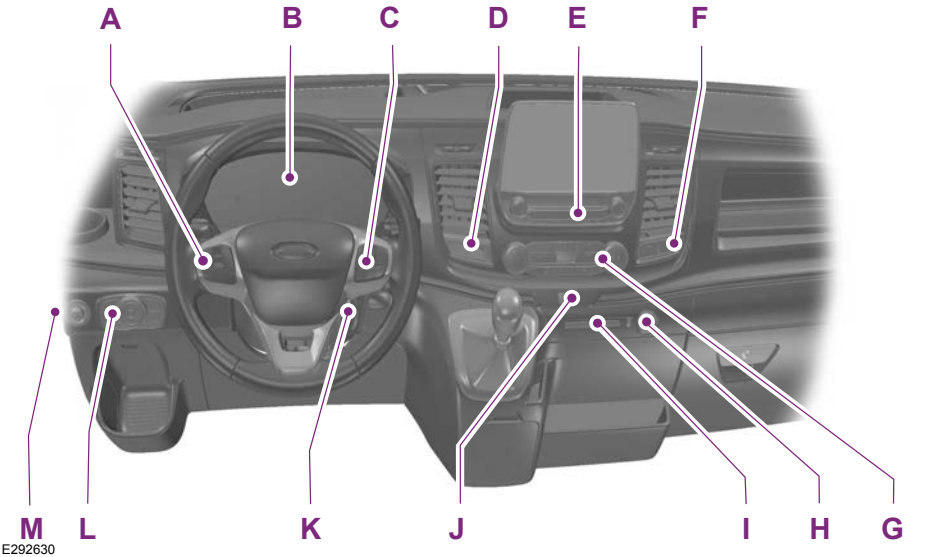
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STEERING WHEEL

A Cruise control buttons. See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 286).

B Information display controls. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 114).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD, VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

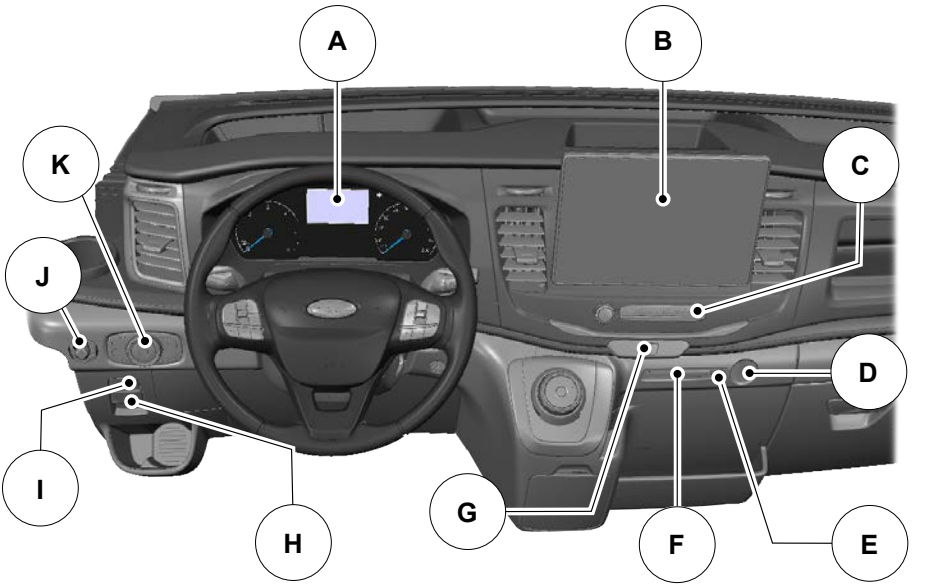


A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 286).
B See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104).
C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).
D See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 266). See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 298).
E See **Switching the Audio Unit On and Off** (page 484).
F See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 178).
G See **Switching Climate Control On and Off** (page 126).
H See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 157).
I See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 49).
J See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 359).
K See **Ignition Switch** (page 163).
L See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 90).
M See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 102).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD, VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4




A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 105).

B See **Status Bar** (page 490).

C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 298).

D See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 157).

E See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 148).

F See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 49).

G See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 359).

H See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 256). See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 256).

I See **Switching Auto Hold On and Off** (page 264).

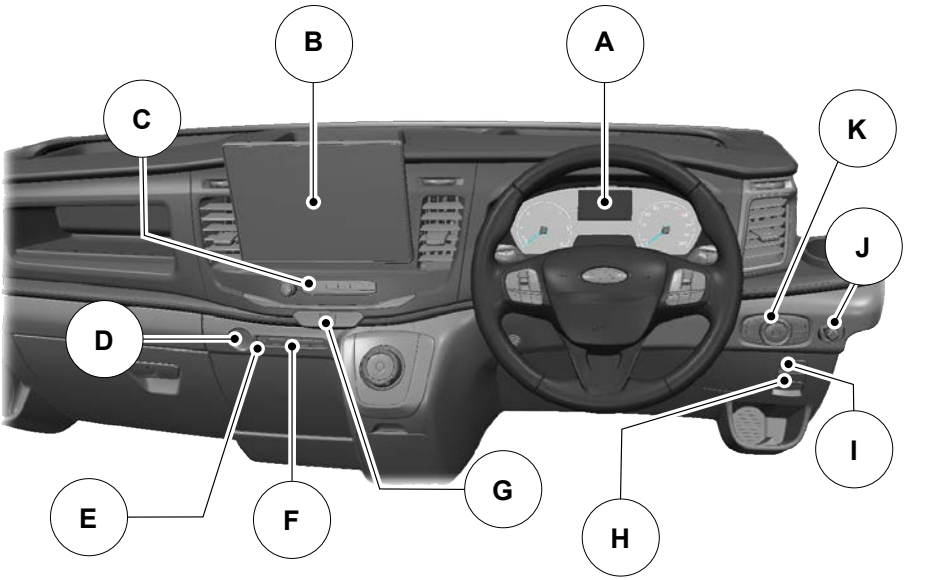
J See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 102).

K See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 90).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD, VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4




A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 105).

B See **Status Bar** (page 490).

C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 298).

D See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 157).

E See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 148).

F See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 49).

G See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 359).

H See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 256). See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 256).

I See **Switching Auto Hold On and Off** (page 264).

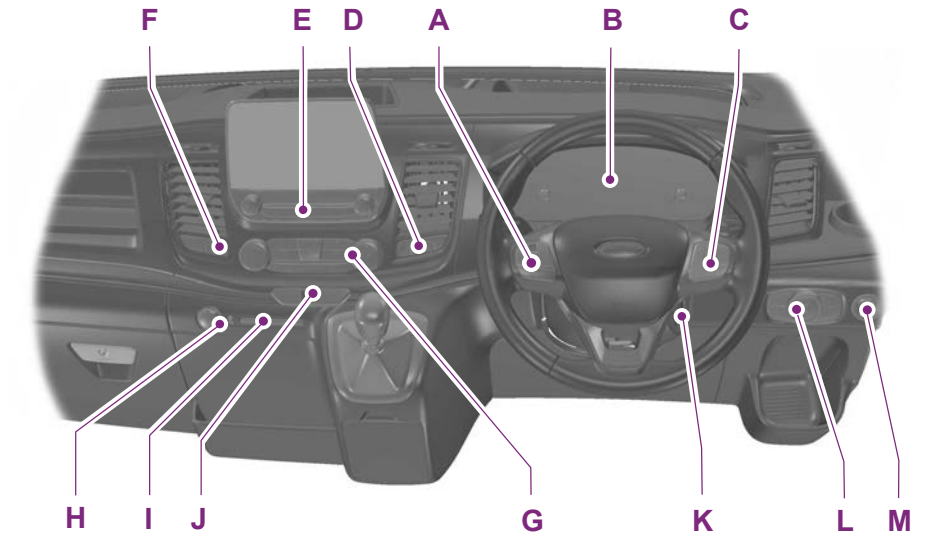
J See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 102).

K See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 90).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD, VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC




E292631

A Cruise control buttons. See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 286).

B Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104).

C Information display controls. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).

D Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off** (page 178).

E Audio unit. See **Switching the Audio Unit On and Off** (page 484).

F Traction control button. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 266).

G Climate control unit. See **Switching Climate Control On and Off** (page 126).

H Auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 157).

I Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 49).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

J Hazard flasher switch. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 359).

K Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 163).

L Lighting control. See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 90).

M Exterior mirror switch. See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 102).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS

Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS

**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

**Type 1**

E188718



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Type 2**

E188215

# CHILD RESTRAINTS

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

| Seating positions | Mass group categories | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40lb) | 15–25 kg (33–55lb) | 22–36 kg (49–79 lb) |
| Front passenger seat with airbag **ON** | X | X | UF[1] | UF[1] | UF[1] |
| Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF** | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] | U[1] |
| Rear seats - second row, center position - bus | U | U | U | U | U |
| Rear seats - second row, center position - bus[2] | X | X | X | X | X |
| Rear seats - second row, outboard positions and third row to sixth row - bus | L | L | L | L | L |
| Rear seats - second row, outboard positions and third row to sixth row - bus[2] | X | X | X | X | X |
| Rear seats - second row - double cab in van | U | U | U | U | U |
| Rear seats - second row - double chassis cab | L | L | L | L | L |
| Rear seats - second row - kombi wide | U | U | U | U | U |
| Rear seats - second row - kombi narrow (window and center seat) | X | X | UF[1] | UF[1] | UF[1] |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Seating positions | Mass group categories | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 0+ | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40lb) | 15–25 kg (33–55lb) | 22–36 kg (49–79 lb) |
| Rear seats - second row - kombi narrow (door side seat) | X | X | X | X | X |
| Rear seats - third row - kombi | L | L | L | L | L |

[1] We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on a rear seat.

[2] Vehicles with non-removable head restraints.

**L** Suitable only for the following child restraints:

- Group 0 and 0+ Britax Baby-safe plus (E1-04301146).
- Group 1 Maxi-Cosi Priori XP (E1-04301153).
- Group 2 and 3 Britax Kid (E1-04301148).

**U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**UF** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraint systems.

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

### ISOFIX Child Restraints

| Seating positions | | Mass group categories | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 0 | 0+ | 1 |
| | | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40 lb) |
| | | Baby safety restraint | | Child safety restraint |
| Rear ISOFIX - second row - bus[1] | Size type | IU | IU | IU |
| | Size class | E | D, E | A, B, B1, D |
| Rear ISOFIX - second row - double cab in van | Size type | IU | IU | IU |
| | Size class | E | C, D, E [2] | A, B, B1, C, D |
| Rear ISOFIX - second row - double chassis cab | Size type | IU | IU | IU |

| Seating positions | | Mass group categories | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 0 | 0+ | 1 |
| | | 0–10 kg (0–22 lb) | 0–13 kg (0–29 lb) | 9–18 kg (20–40 lb) |
| | | Baby safety restraint | | Child safety restraint |
| | Size class | E | C, D, E [2] | A, B, B1, C, D |
| Rear ISOFIX - second row - kombi | Size type | IU | IU | IU |
| | Size class | E | C, D, E [2] | A, B, B1, C, D |
| Rear ISOFIX - third row - kombi | Size type | X | X | IU |
| | Size class | | | A, B, B1 |

[1] If your vehicle has a single passenger front row seat, C-type seats are suitable. If your vehicle has dual passenger front row seats, only D-type seats are suitable.

[2] No ISOFIX available if the vehicle seats have non-removable head restraints.

**IU** Suitable for universal category ISOFIX child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**Note:** *When you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.*

The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters A to E. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**Note:** *Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.*

**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

## BOOSTER SEATS

### Booster Seat

Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

### Booster Cushion

**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: POWER SLIDING DOOR

**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

E176719

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.

You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER SLIDING DOOR

**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

The child safety lock switch is on the instrument panel.

Press the switch to switch the child safety locks on.

**Note:** ***ON*** *illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch them off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Child lock malfunction See manual | Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

### Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

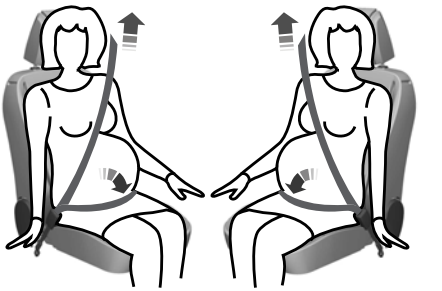
2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

### Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



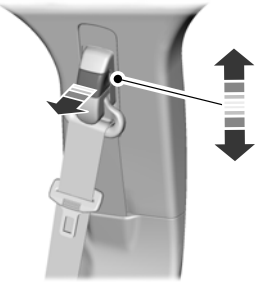
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.

The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

### SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

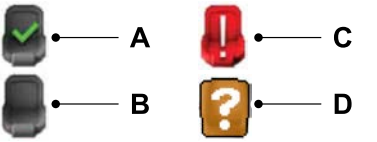
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

### SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

### CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS




| | |
|---|---|
| A | Seatbelt fastened. |
| B | Seatbelt not fastened. |
| C | Rear seatbelt recently unfastened. |
| D | Fault. |

#### Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Information***.
4. Select ***Seatbelts***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

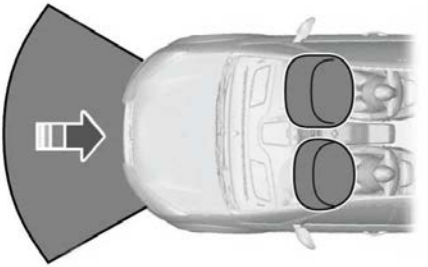
### SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

**WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



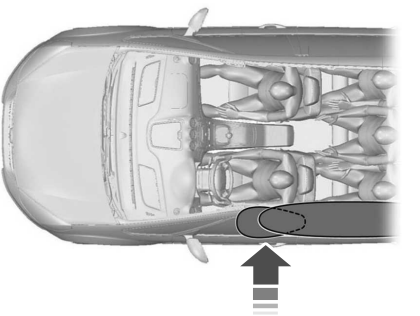
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

## PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

## SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF

### Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Passenger airbag***.
5. Select ***Passenger airbag off***.
6. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Switching the Passenger Airbag On

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Passenger airbag***.
5. Select ***Passenger airbag on***.
6. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

## AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS

If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

## PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Pedestrian sounder malfunction Service now | The system has malfunctioned. | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance is a system that automatically uses your paired phone to call the emergency services in the event of a severe accident.

## HOW DOES EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, your vehicle can contact emergency services by dialing the emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 27).

**Note:** *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Not all crashes deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone, SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time, about 10 seconds, to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

**WARNING:** Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Emergency Assistance works correctly when all of the following occur:

- SYNC works properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature is set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle has battery power and is in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

**Note:** *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

- Russia.
- Ukraine.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY

Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back when not in use.

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the vehicle on to turn it off.

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the vehicle is off.*

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

1. Press the key release button.

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

4. Carefully remove the cover.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

5. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

**Note:** *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

6. Remove the battery.
7. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
8. Replace the battery cover.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

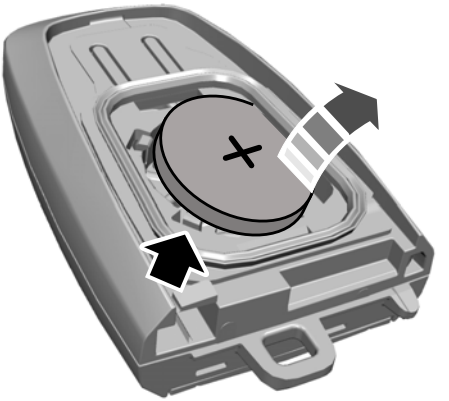


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

E218401

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

**Note:** *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Key battery low Replace soon | Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control? | This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted settings to promote good driving habits.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

### CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

#### Speed Limit

**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

#### Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

#### Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

#### Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Traction and Stability Control

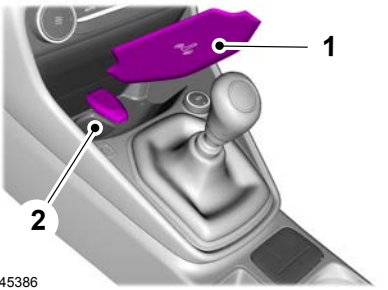
If you set traction control or stability control to be always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***MyKey***.
4. Select ***Create MyKey***.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the admin key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
5. Select ***MyKey***.
6. Select ***Create MyKey***.
7. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***MyKey***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.
5. Configure the setting.
6. Switch the ignition off.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***MyKey***.
4. Select ***Clear MyKeys***.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***MyKey***.
4. Select ***MyKey info***.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Key is already a MyKey | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey. |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Place key in backup location | Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62). |
| Key is already a MyKey | Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey. |
| Key restricted at next start. Label this key | Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 62).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

### Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

## UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

### Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock all doors.

### Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

**Note:** *For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See* ***Keyless Entry*** *(page 79).*

### Double Locking the Doors

**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

**Note:** *If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.*

Press the button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** *You can double lock your vehicle with the key. Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

## UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

### Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

### What Are TVL Mechanical Locks

Optional mechanical locking system that provides additional security to passenger and cargo doors. For more information, see the TVL website.

**Note:** *Do not engage the TVL locks when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle, excluding the replock. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside when the TVL locks are engaged.*

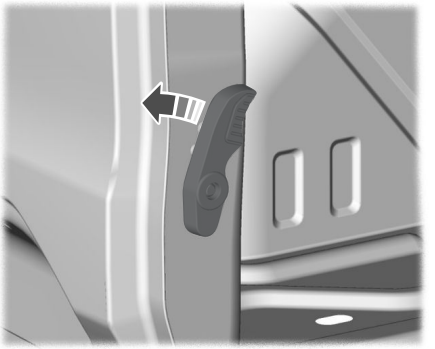


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

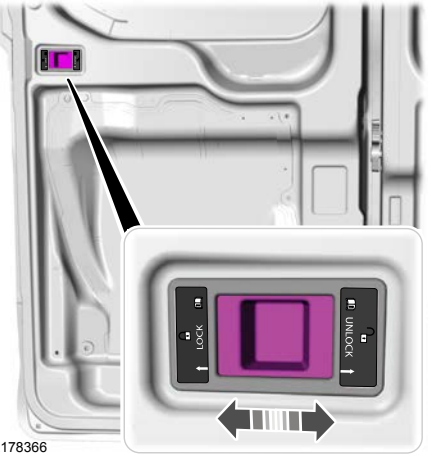
### Opening the Double Rear Doors

E148805



E148806

### Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors




E178366

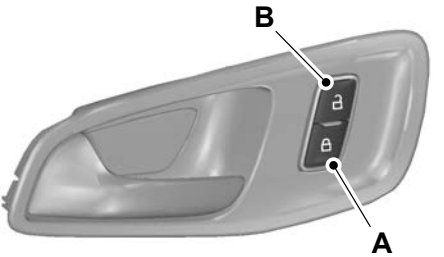
1. Slide the lever to release the catch.
2. Fully open the cargo door.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

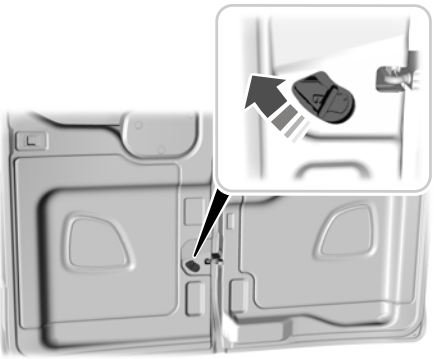
### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING




E148829

A Lock
B Unlock

### OPENING THE REAR DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE IN AN EMERGENCY

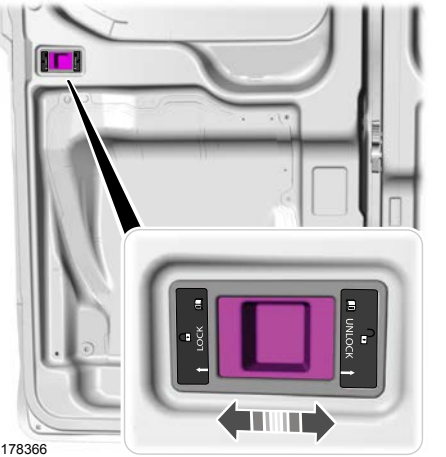


E171968

Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

### OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

#### Double Rear Door




E178366

Slide the lever to release the catch and open the double rear doors fully.

## REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door, or cabin door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door or cabin door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

**Note:** *Depending on the locking mechanism, you can program the unlocking function to unlock the driver door or the cabin doors.*

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Locks***.
4. Select ***Unlocking***.
5. Select ***All doors*** or ***Driver's door***.

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

### AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

### SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***Auto unlock*** on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle doors when you start driving.

### AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

### SWITCHING AUTOLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

3. Select ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***Auto lock*** on or off.

## AUTORELOCK

### HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

## DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

### Door Ajar Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

### DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Driver door open | Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door. |
| Passenger door open | |
| Rear left door open | |
| Rear right door open | |
| Bonnet open | Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS

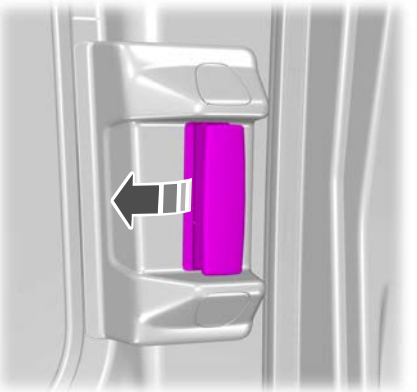
**WARNING:** Fully close the sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not open or close the sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**Note:** *Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.*

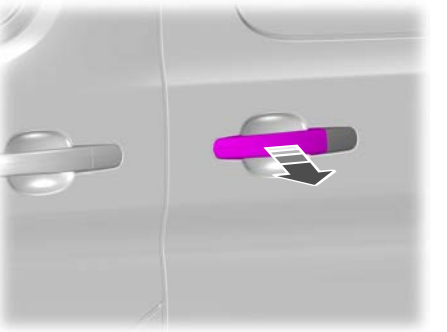
## OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

### OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the interior door handle to open the sliding door.

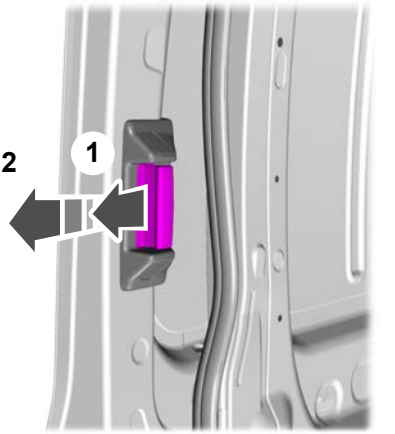
### OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

## CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

### CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



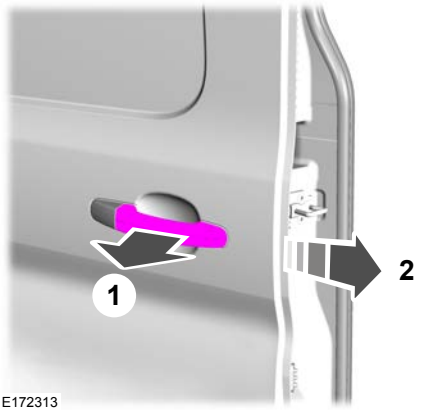

E171966



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

1. Pull the interior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

## CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE




E172313

1. Pull the exterior door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Fully close the power sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not open or close the power sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** When closing the power sliding door, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that people and pets are not in the proximity of the sliding door opening.

**Note:** *Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.*

**Note:** *If you operate the sliding door often during a short period of time, the system could become not available for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

Allow the system to open the sliding door. Do not manually push or pull the sliding door when it is moving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

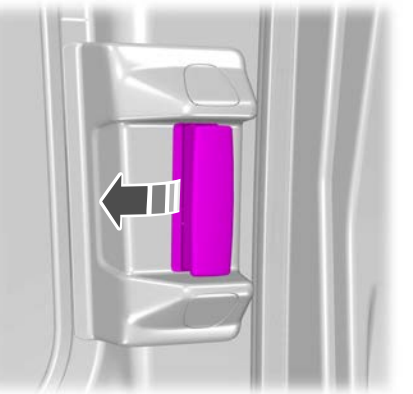
## OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

### OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

#### Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button

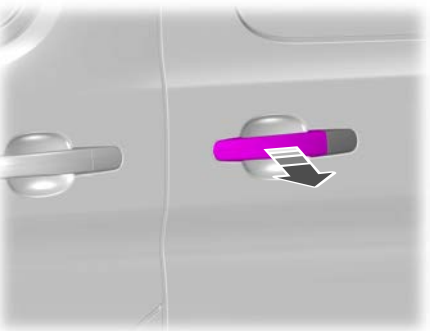
Press the button on the instrument panel to open the sliding door.

#### Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle



Pull and release the door handle to open the sliding door.

### OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE





Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Pull and release the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

### OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.

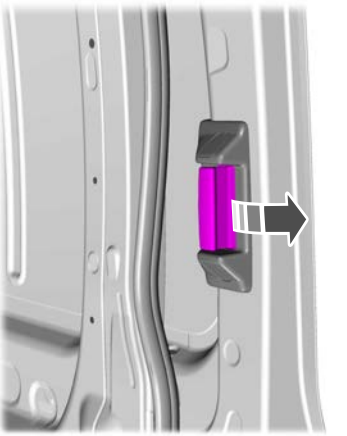
## CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

### CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

#### Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Instrument Panel Button

Press the button on the instrument panel to close the sliding door. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

#### Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle Using the Sliding Door Handle

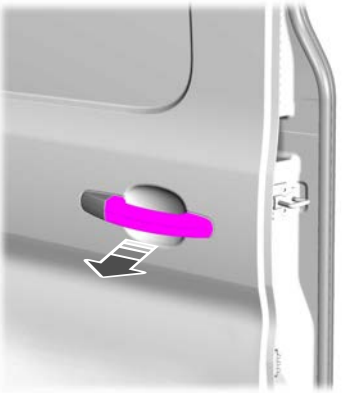


Pull and release the interior sliding door handle to close the sliding door.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull and release the exterior door handle to close the sliding door.

## CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the sliding door begins to close.

## STOPPING THE SLIDING DOOR MOVEMENT

You can stop the sliding door movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the sliding door button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Pressing the sliding door button on the instrument panel.
- Pulling the sliding door interior or exterior door handle.

## RESETTING THE POWER SLIDING DOOR

Make sure that you complete the procedure within 10 seconds.

To reset the power sliding door do the following:

1. Manually close the sliding door.

**Note:** *Make sure that the sliding door is fully closed.*

2. Pull the interior door handle in closing direction three times within three seconds.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SLIDING DOOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SLIDING DOOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Right power sliding door Calibration needed | The system has malfunctioned. Manually close the power sliding door. Pull and release the power sliding door handle to open the power sliding door. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Left power sliding door Calibration needed | |
| Right rear door motor disconnected See manual | The system has malfunctioned. Reset the power sliding door. See **Resetting the Power Sliding Door** (page 76). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Left rear door motor disconnected See manual | |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SLIDING DOOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why does the power sliding door stop moving?**

The power sliding door stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the power sliding door starts moving in the opposite direction. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the power sliding door.

**Why is the power sliding door moving with reduced speed?**

You let the power sliding door open for more than five minutes. Fully close the power sliding door using the button on the instrument panel or the power sliding door handles. Open the power sliding door as normal.

**Why can I not close the power sliding door?**

If the power sliding door does not close, restart the engine and then close it as normal. See **Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle** (page 75). If the power sliding door still does not close, manually close the power sliding door and then open it as normal. If the power sliding door still does not close the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**What can I do if the power sliding door does not operate as normal?**

If there is a malfunction on the power sliding door, restart the engine.

**How can I open the sliding door if the system loses power?**

If the sliding door loses power, you could need to apply more force when trying to open it. Push the back of the sliding door and the interior sliding door handle in opening direction at the same time and open it as normal.

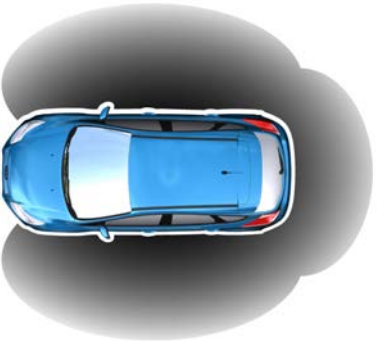


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and rear doors.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***KeyFree*** on or off.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Locks***.
4. Select ***Unlocking***.
5. Select ***All doors*** or ***Driver's door***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

### Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Press the sensor twice in 3 seconds to double lock your vehicle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

**Note:** *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, if the key is within the respective detection range.

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why does the keyless entry system not function?**

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 79). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

**Why can I not lock my vehicle?**

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

**Why does the passive key not work?**

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

## WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

## ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

## DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

# ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

## WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The Anti-Theft Alarm System warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

## WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

## WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if the vehicle battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

### ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when your vehicle is switched off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

### DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

### WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, full guard and reduced guard.

#### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

#### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.*

### SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Alarm system***.
4. Select ***Alarm settings***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

**After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

| Menu Item | Action |
|---|---|
| Full guard | Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the ***OK*** button. |
| Reduced guard | |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

### SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Alarm system***.
4. Select ***Ask on exit***.
5. Switch ***Ask on exit*** on or off.

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| No key detected | The system has not detected a correctly coded key. |
| Starting system malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm | Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. |
| Alarm announcement | |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

**What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## POWER RUNNING BOARD PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** In extreme climates, excessive ice buildup may occur, causing the running boards not to deploy. Make sure that the running boards have deployed, and have finished moving before attempting to step on them. The running boards will resume normal function once the blockage is cleared.

**WARNING:** Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

Do not use the running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors, or the running board underbody mounts to lift your vehicle when jacking. Use proper jacking points.

The running boards could move slower in cold temperatures.

## POWER RUNNING BOARD SETTINGS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Power step***.
4. Select a setting.

### Power Running Board Settings

#### *Off*

The power running boards remain stowed, regardless of door position.

#### *Auto*

The power running boards deploy when you open the door and stow when you close the door.

#### *Out*

The power running boards remain deployed, regardless of door position.

## DEPLOYING AND STOWING THE POWER RUNNING BOARDS

The power running boards deploy when you open the door and stow when you close the door.

**Note:** *The power running boards reverse direction and move to the end of travel if they encounter an object when moving.*

## POWER RUNNING BOARDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### POWER RUNNING BOARDS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why is there unwanted noise coming from my power running boards?**

The power running board mechanism could trap debris such as mud, dirt, snow, ice and salt. If this happens, set the running boards to the deployed position. Then, wash the system, in particular the front and rear hinge arms, with a high-pressure car wash wand.

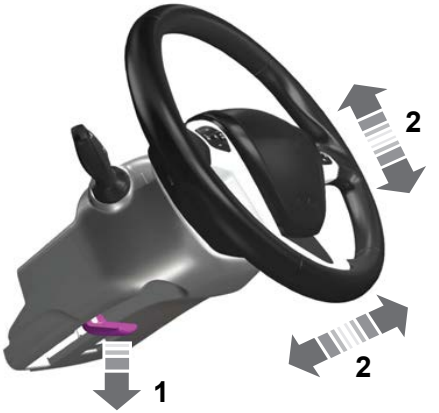


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 136).*




E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

**WARNING:** Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position ***I***.

**Note:** *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# WIPERS

## WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

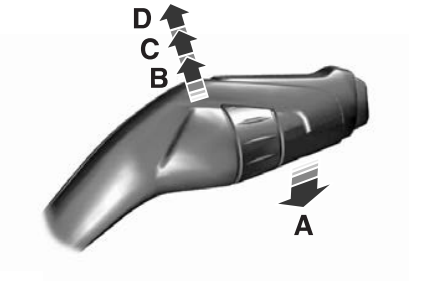
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 88). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 88).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

## SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF




A Single wipe.

B Intermittent wipe.

C Normal wipe.

D High-speed wipe.

# AUTOWIPERS

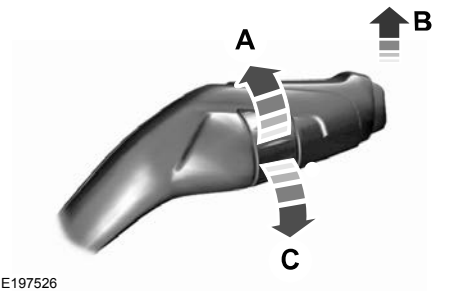
## WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

## AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Wipers***.
4. Switch ***Rain sensing*** on or off.

## ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR




A High sensitivity.

B Autowipers on.

C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers.



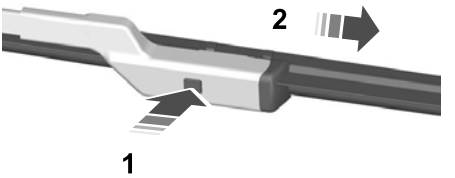
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.*

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES




1. Lift the wiper arm. Press the wiper blade locking button.

**Note:** *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

2. Remove the wiper blade

**Note:** *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

### USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** *A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See* ***Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off*** *(page 88).*

### SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Wipers***.
4. Switch ***Courtesy wipe*** on or off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 473).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

**Note:** *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

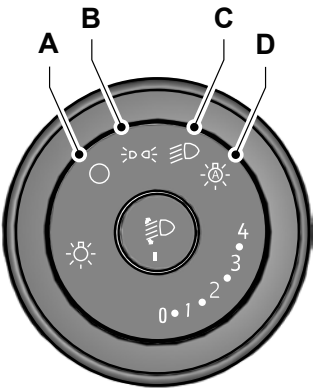
**Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?**

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 88). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 88).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL




A Lamps off.

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps.

C Headlamps.

D Autolamps. See **What Are Autolamps** (page 92).

Rotate the control to make a selection.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

### SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

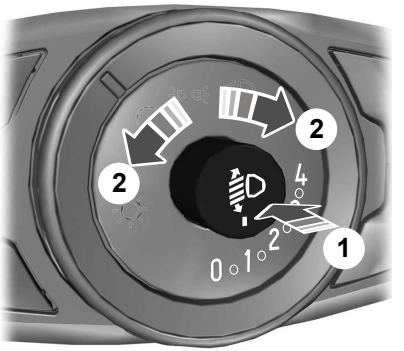
To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** *The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS




E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.
3. Press to close the control.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On

Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

### Headlamp High Beam

Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

# HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

## HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why is there condensation in the headlamps?**

Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

**How much condensation is acceptable?**

The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

**How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?**

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

**How much condensation is unacceptable?**

A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

**What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?**

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS

**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Lighting***.
4. Select ***Headlamp delay***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### SWITCHING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS ON AND OFF

Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** *Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.*

### SWITCHING THE SIDE MARKER LAMPS ON AND OFF

#### Switching the Side Marker Lamps On

**Both Sides**

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.

**Note:** *Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

**One Side**

1. Switch the ignition off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Push the lever up or down to switch the side marker lamps on.

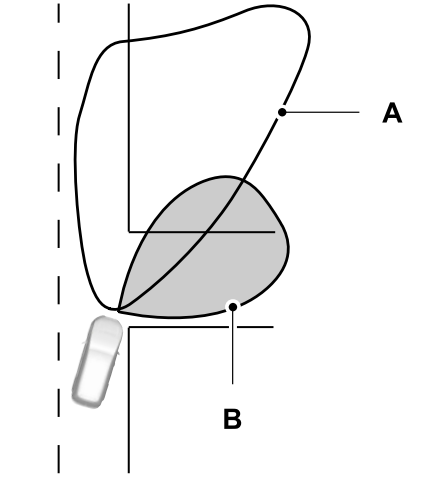
### Switching the Side Marker Lamps Off

Side marker lamps turn off if any of the following occur:

- You switch all the lamps off.
- You switch the ignition on.

## HOW DO CORNERING LAMPS WORK

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when your vehicle is in reverse.




A Headlamp beam.

B Cornering lamp beam.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS ON AND OFF

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.

Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** *Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

**Note:** *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

**Note:** *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the headlamps are on.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### SWITCHING THE REAR FOG LAMPS ON AND OFF

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.

Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

### SWITCHING THE REAR FLOODLAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the button on the rear door to switch the rear floodlamps on and off.

**Note:** *Rear floodlamps turn off approximately 30 minutes after you switch them on.*

### EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

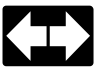
#### Front Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

#### Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

#### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.*

### EXTERIOR LAMP AUDIBLE WARNING

#### Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

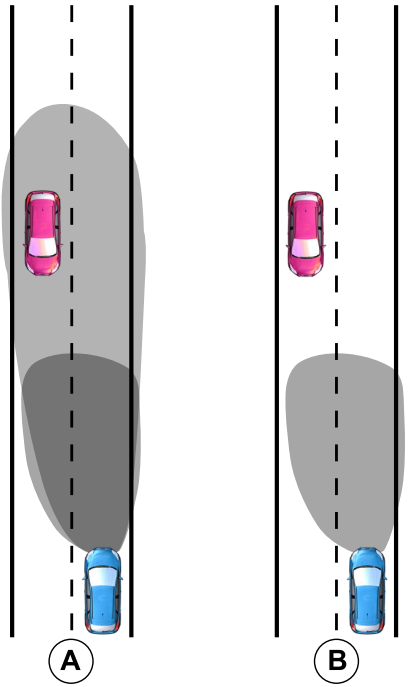
### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




A Without automatic high beam control.

B With automatic high beam control.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

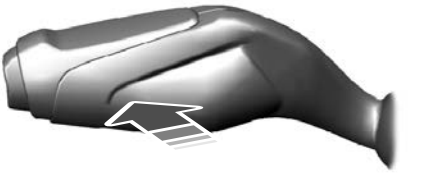
### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Lighting***.
4. Switch ***Auto highbeam*** on or off.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

### OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

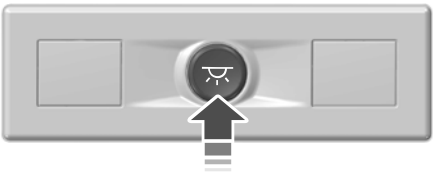
### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera temporarily not available | The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera malfunction Service required | The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

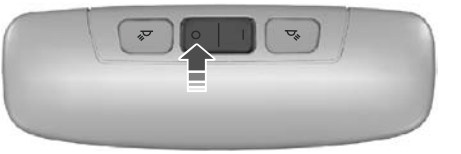
## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS



Press the button on the overhead console to switch all of the interior lamps or emergency lighting on and off.

**Note:** *The interior lamps turn off after approximately 30 minutes unless your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or you lock the doors from outside your vehicle.*

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS/VAN



## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS/VAN

E112208

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - BUS

### Reading Lamp Function

When you switch the reading lamp function on, the rear reading lamps can be switched on and off.

#### Switching the Reading Lamp Function On and Off

Press the button on the overhead console.

**Note:** *The indicator illuminates amber when the reading lamp function is off.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Switching the Rear Reading Lamps On and Off

Press the button on the interior lamp.

**Note:** *You can only switch the rear reading lamps on and off when the reading lamp function is on.*

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF - BUS/ VAN

E293629

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

## CARGO LAMPS - VAN

### SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch the cargo lamps on or off when a door is open.

The switch is inside the cargo area, behind the left-hand rear door.

**Note:** *The cargo lamps switch only operates when the ignition is off.*

The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time to prevent the battery from running out of charge.

If the cargo lamps turned off to prevent the battery from running out of charge or you switched them off by pressing the button, reset the switch before switching the cargo lamps on.

### RESETTING THE CARGO LAMP SWITCH

To reset the switch, do one of the following:

- Lock or unlock a door.
- Open or close a front door.
- Switch the ignition on then off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS

**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

**Note:** *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### Driver Side One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Driver Side One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

#### Resetting Driver Side One-Touch Close

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Lift the window control switch for one more second.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift the window control switch again for one more second.

**Note:** *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

### OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

**Note:** *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

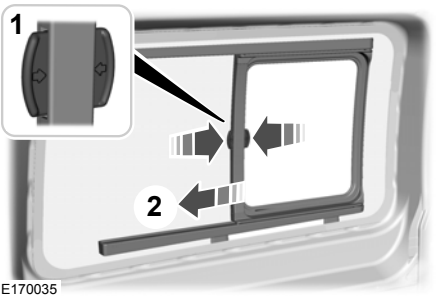
**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift the switch again for one more second.

**Note:** *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

**Note:** *If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory.*

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SLIDING WINDOWS

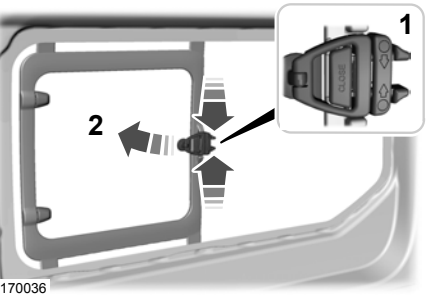


E170035

1. Press and hold the unlock button.
2. Slide the window.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE REAR QUARTER WINDOWS

### Opening the Rear Quarter Windows



E170036

1. Press the unlock button to release the catch.

**Note:** *Depending on the lock type fitted, you have to either press the unlock buttons together or down to release the catch.*

2. Hold the catch and push the window open. Make sure the catch engages.

**Note:** *There is an audible click when the catch engages.*

### Closing the Rear Quarter Windows

1. Hold and pull the catch to close the window.
2. Press the catch to engage the lock.

**Note:** *There is an audible click when the lock engages.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

## MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

### AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

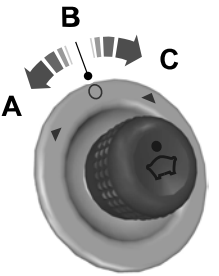
**Note:** *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*



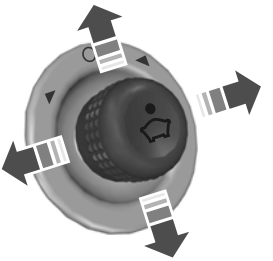
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.




A Left-hand mirror switch.
B Neutral.
C Right-hand mirror switch.



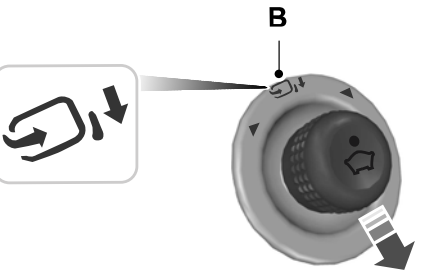
Move the adjustment control in the direction of the arrows to adjust the mirror.

## FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS




Move the adjustment control downward to fold or unfold the mirrors.

**Note:** *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

**Note:** *You can only fold the mirrors when the adjustment control is set to position B.*

**Note:** *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function could turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

**Note:** *Do not manually fold or unfold power folding mirrors.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

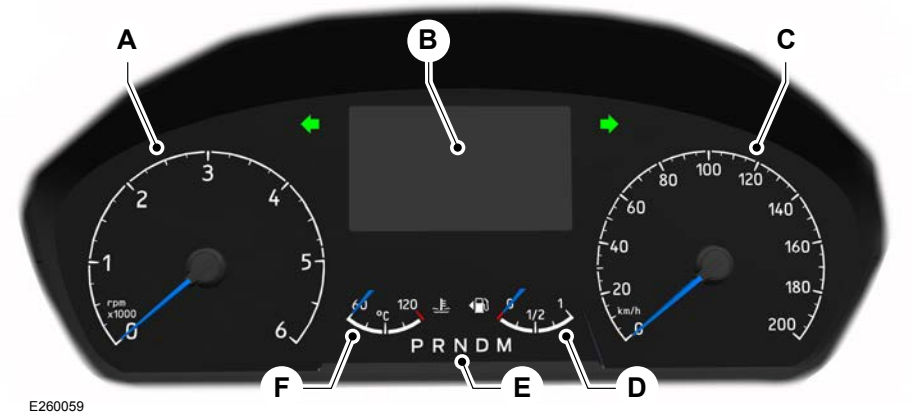
- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as your reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE

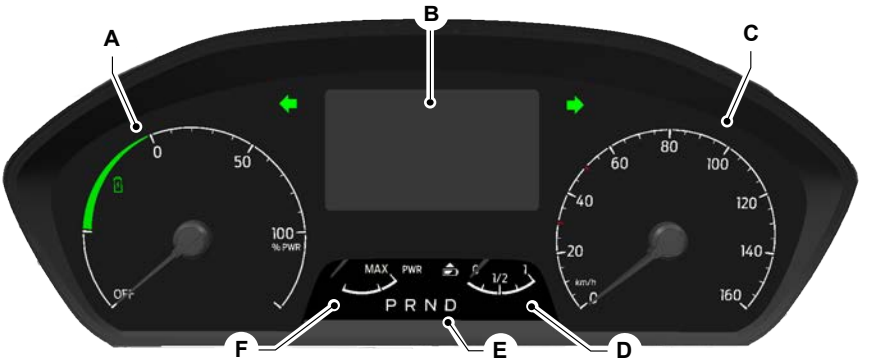



A Tachometer.
B Information display.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.
E Automatic transmission position indicators.
F Engine coolant temperature gauge.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - ELECTRIC MOTOR




A Power gauge.
B Instrument cluster display.
C Speedometer.
D High voltage battery gauge.
E Automatic transmission position indicators.
F Power availability.

## TACHOMETER - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Indicates the engine speed.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## FUEL GAUGE - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

### FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

### LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (12 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

### WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

## VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel on the battery power that remains. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Driving while carrying a heavy load.

Changes in driving patterns can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase, or stay constant for periods of time.

**Note:** *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See* ***Maximizing Your Driving Range*** *(page 356).*

**Note:** *After a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer occurs, the high voltage battery level decreases, resulting in a reduction in the vehicle range by a few miles or kilometers per transfer.*

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a gauge or a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you can get from plugging your vehicle in.

The indicator is normally white. When a low battery condition is reached the indicator is amber.

### Charging Status

Additional charge information displays when you power on your vehicle without pressing the brake pedal and your vehicle is plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. When DC charging, the time



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

at 80% displays followed by the time at 100%. You can modify your vehicle charge settings on the information and entertainment display. See **Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences** (page 232).

**Charge Required to Reach Destination**

When the navigation system has an active route, the instrument cluster displays the charge level required in order to reach your destination and the time when that charge level is available.

## ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

### Airbag Warning Lamp

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Blind Spot Information System And Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp

If the system malfunctions, the warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Brake Pad Wear Warning Lamp

It illuminates when the brake pads have worn down to a predetermined limit. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Door Ajar Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

### Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp

It illuminates or flashes yellow when the electric parking brake requires service.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Engine Warning Lamps

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

### Fuel Filter Service Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

### High Voltage Battery

It illuminates white under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, then the battery is low on charge.

### Ignition Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp

It could illuminate when you switch the system off. If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Parking Brake Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp

It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates amber when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

### Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp

The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects that the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the system off.

### Stop Safely Warning Lamp

It illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Lamp

It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or flashes when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Vehicle Plugged In Warning Lamp

It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

### Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator

Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 288).

### Auto-Start-Stop Indicators

It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

### Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator

It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

### Blind Spot Information System Indicator

When the system detects a vehicle, the indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the indicator flashes.

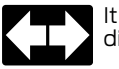
### Cross Traffic Alert Indicator

When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display, or the Sync display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

### Cruise Control Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

### Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

### Eco Mode Indicator

It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

### Efficient Drive Mode Indicator

It indicates that you have to slowly decelerate.

### Front Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

### Glow Plug Indicator

If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

### Hazard Flasher Indicator

It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

### High Beam Headlamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Lamps On Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

### Lane Keeping Aid Indicator

It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.

### Lane Keeping Alert Indicator

It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Alert Mode is selected.

### Mud/Ruts Mode Indicator

It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

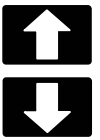
### Ready to Drive Indicator

Illuminates when you have switched on your vehicle and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may appear stating ready to drive.

### Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

### Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.

### Slippery Mode Indicator

It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

### Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator

It flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Tow/Haul Mode Indicator

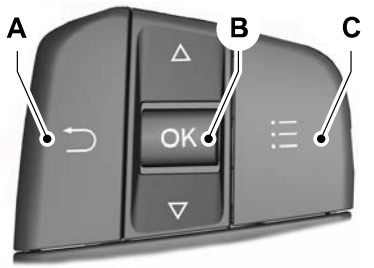
It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

E257718




A Return button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### *OK* Button

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection.

You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

### Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

| Menu Item |
|---|
| ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2*** |
| MyView |
| Driver assist. |
| Navigation |
| Audio |
| Phone |
| Settings |

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select a screen.
3. Press the ***OK*** button.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Language***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Measurement unit***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Temperature unit***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle***.
3. Select ***Chimes***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

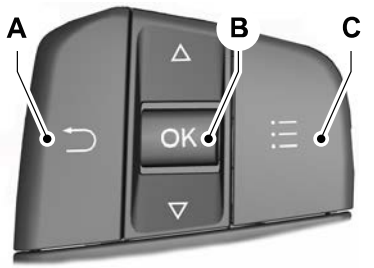
An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS




A Return button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### *OK* Button

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection.

You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

### Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

| Menu Item |
|---|
| ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2*** |
| MyView |
| Driver assist. |
| Navigation |
| Audio |
| Phone |
| Settings |

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select a screen.
3. Press the ***OK*** button.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Language***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Measurement unit***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Temperature unit***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

### SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle***.
3. Select ***Chimes***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## WHAT IS THE TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

## VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings though the touchscreen.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the trip screen.
2. Press the menu button.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the trip screen.
2. Press the menu button.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

## RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

1. Navigate to the trip screen.
2. Press the menu button.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Select ***Reset individual values***.
5. Select the value to reset.
6. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

## CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the trip screen.
2. Press the menu button.
3. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
4. Select ***Configure view***.
5. Select the value to display.
6. Press the ***OK*** button.

## TRIP DATA

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

### How Is My Driving

Display's scores for trip driving behavior. Higher scores result in better energy economy.

- Acceleration – Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking – We recommend slow and steady braking.
- Speed – Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores.

You can view additional trip data by pressing the icon on your touchscreen.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Remote start***.
4. Switch ***System*** on.

**Note:** *To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Enabling and Disabling the Modem*** *(page 478).*

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** *The turn signal lamps flash twice.*

**Note:** *The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.*

**Note:** *The horn sounds if the system fails to start.*

**Note:** *All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

**Note:** *You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.*

**Note:** *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.*

**Note:** *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.*

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** *The turn signal lamps flash twice.*

**Note:** *The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.*

**Note:** *The horn sounds if the system fails to start.*

**Note:** *All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

**Note:** *You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.*

**Note:** *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the vehicle on and drive your vehicle.*

**Note:** *A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extention are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle on, then off.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is plugged in during remote start it uses energy from your charging source.*

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Remote start***.
4. Select ***Climate control***.
5. Select ***Auto*** or ***Last settings***.

**Note:** *If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).*

**Note:** *If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

### Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Remote start***.
4. Select ***Seats***.
5. Select ***Auto*** or ***Off***.

**Note:** *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

### Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Remote start***.
4. Select ***Duration***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

**Note:** *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.

Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.

Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

**Note:** *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

**Note:** *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

**Note:** *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

**Note:** *In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

**Note:** *You can press **+** or **-** to set the blower motor speed.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the heated mirror of thin ice and fog. The system turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

**Note:** *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

**Note:** *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.

Slide the control to set the temperature.

**Note:** *You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.*

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

### AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Auto Mode Indicator Status | Description |
|---|---|
| One indicator illuminated. | The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior. |
| Two indicators illuminated. | The blower motor speed is moderate. |
| Three indicators illuminated. | The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

DUAL

Press the button.

**Note:** *When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.*

**Note:** *Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.*

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

**Automatic Climate Control**

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents.In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - ELECTRIC MOTOR

### General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

#### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press ***MAX A/C***.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press ***AUTO***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

**Note:** *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch the windshield air vents on.

Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.

Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF

Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to maximize defrosting.

**Note:** *The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.*

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

**Note:** *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

**Note:** *The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.*

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

**Note:** *The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.*

**Note:** *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

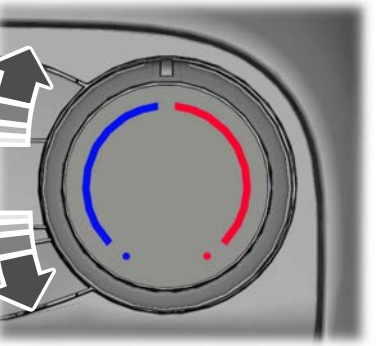
**Note:** *Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.*

**Note:** *When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

Press the button.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release ***A/C***.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents

When you direct air to the overhead air vents, the system distributes cold air.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

When you direct air to the footwell air vents, the system distributes hot air.

### Directing Air to the Overhead Air Vents and the Footwell Air Vents

When you direct air to the Overhead and footwell air vents, the system distributes warm air.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

## AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

**Note:** *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.*

**Note:** *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

**Note:** *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

## SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Aux heater***.

## AUXILIARY HEATER INDICATORS

### Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the system on.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE PARKING HEATER

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system assists the engine to reach operating temperature sooner. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

The system keeps the windshield clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.

## PARKING HEATER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the right front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.*

**Note:** *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

**Note:** *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

## PARKING HEATER LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

The system does not operate in any of the following conditions:

- The battery charge level is low.
- The fuel level is low.
- The outside temperature is too high.

The system may not correctly operate when your vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

## PARKING HEATER SETTINGS

### SWITCHING CONTINUE HEAT ON

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Park heater***.
4. Select ***Continue heat***.

**Note:** *You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the checkbox in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.*

### SETTING THE PARKING HEATER TIMER

The system has three different modes that you can set.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Single Time

Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the parking heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Park heater***.
4. Select ***Heater programming***.
5. Select ***Activate***.
6. Select ***Once***.
7. Set the date and time you prefer.
8. Select ***Activate***.

**Note:** *The date and time must be set before you can activate this mode.*

**Note:** *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

### Recurring Time One

Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Park heater***.
4. Select ***Heater programming***.
5. Select ***Activate***.
6. Select ***Time one***.
7. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
8. Select ***Activate***.

**Note:** *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

### Recurring Time Two

Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Park heater***.
4. Select ***Heater programming***.
5. Select ***Activate***.
6. Select ***Time two***.
7. Set the time and day of the week you prefer.
8. Select ***Activate***.

**Note:** *The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.*

## SWITCHING THE PARKING HEATER ON AND OFF WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

To start the heater, press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

To stop the heater, press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

**Note:** *Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.*

## PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

| Transmitter LED | Description |
|---|---|
| Green | The transmitter sent a radio signal. |
| Flashing green | The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal. |
| Red | The transmitter sent a radio signal. |
| Flashing red | The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal. |

**Note:** *The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.*

## CHANGING THE PARKING HEATER REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a pin or paper clip, in the position shown to unlock the battery cover.

2. Press the tool down to release and simultaneously remove the battery cover.

3. Remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

5. Replace the battery cover.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## PARKING HEATER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING HEATER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Park heater not started Low fuel level | Displays if the fuel level is too low. |
| Park heater not started Low battery state of charge | Displays if the battery is low or has no charge. |
| Park heater not started Outside temperature too high | Displays if the outside temperature is too high. |
| Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days | If the vehicle has not been started in seven days or more before a programmed start, the timer is deleted and must be reset. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

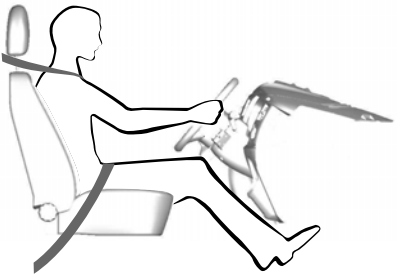
**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always keep their whole body inside the vehicle when it is moving.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.



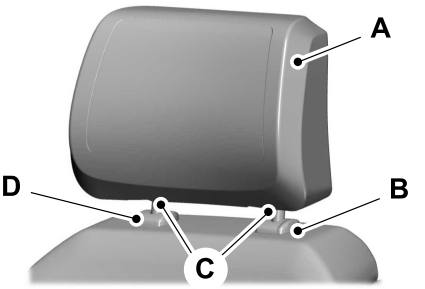
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS




The head restraints consist of:

| | |
|---|---|
| A | An energy absorbing head restraint. |
| B | Guide sleeve adjust and release button. |
| C | Two steel stems. |
| D | Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped). |

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

#### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

#### Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

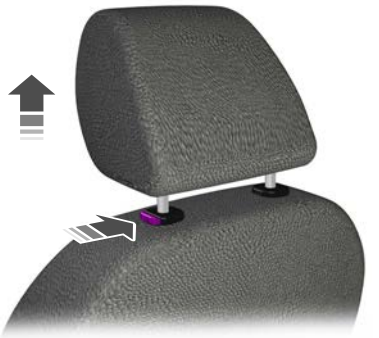


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

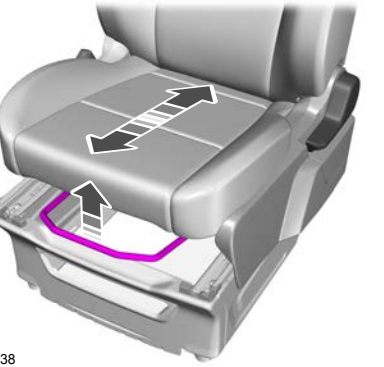
## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



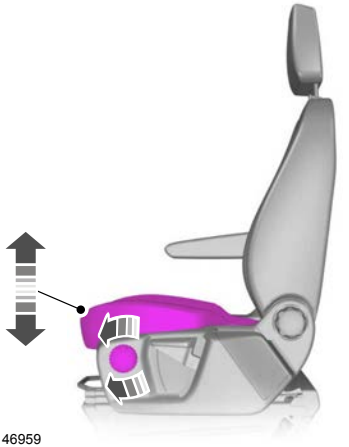
E177638

**Note:** *The driver seat has removable stop bolts on the track to enable access to the vehicle battery. See* ***Changing the 12V Battery*** *(page 401).*



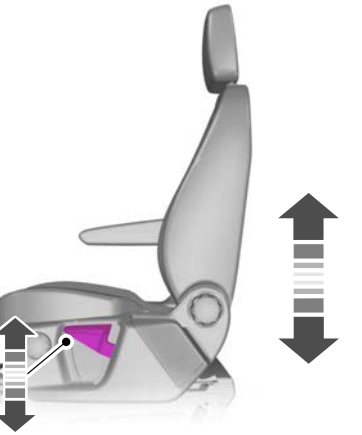
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



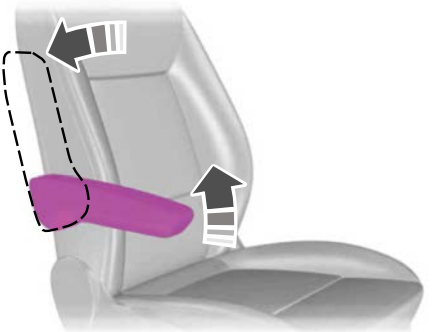
E146959

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT

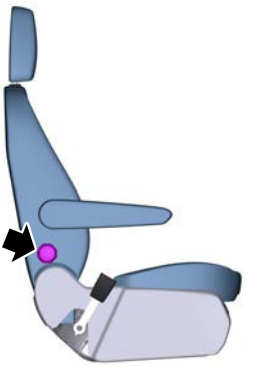


E146384

## FOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



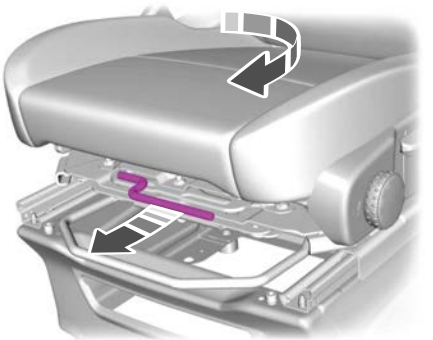
E146386



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWIVELING THE SEAT

**WARNING:** Make sure the seat locks into place and is facing forward when your vehicle is moving.



The seat can swivel through 180 degrees in an inboard direction.

You may need to adjust the seat to allow sufficient clearance for it to swivel in a single motion.

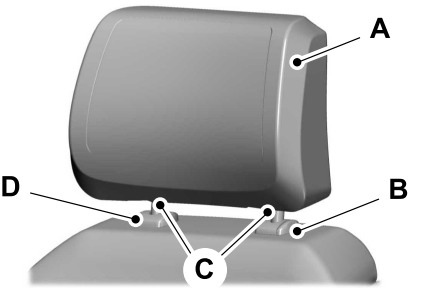
**Note:** *We recommend that the seat is unoccupied.*

### Swivel Seat Audible Warning

Sounds when the driver or passenger seat is not locked into place, and the ignition is on.

## POWER SEATS

### HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS




The head restraints consist of:

| | |
|---|---|
| A | An energy absorbing head restraint. |
| B | Guide sleeve lock and release button. |
| C | Two steel stems. |
| D | Guide sleeve. |

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

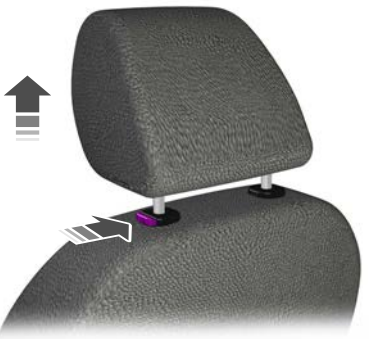
### Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

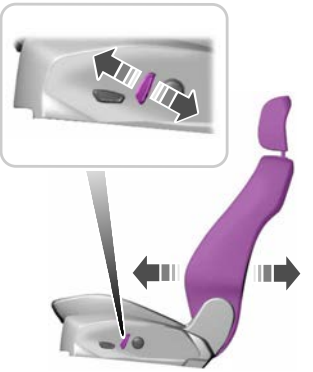
## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

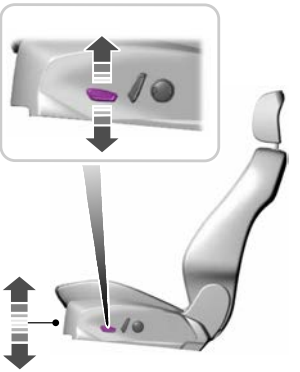
## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

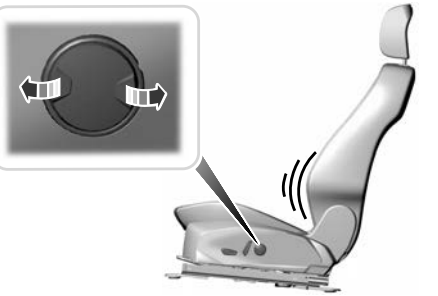
## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



## HEATED SEATS

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** *Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

### Automatic Heated Seats (If Equipped)

When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

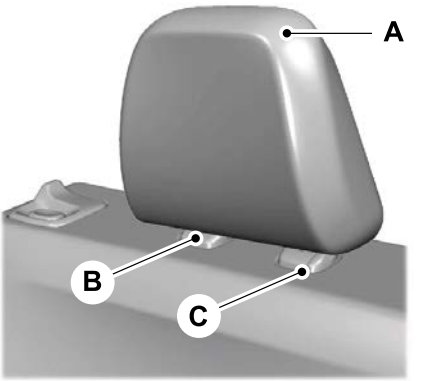


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS

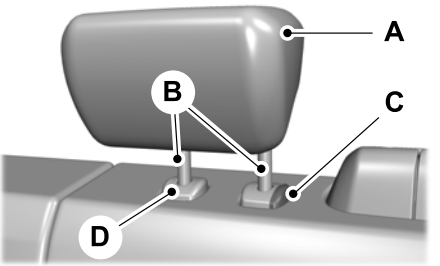
#### Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints




The head restraints consist of:

| | |
|---|---|
| A | An energy absorbing head restraint. |
| B | Guide sleeve. |
| C | Locking guide sleeve. |

#### Rear Seat Center Head Restraint




The head restraint consists of:

| | |
|---|---|
| A | An energy absorbing head restraint. |
| B | Two steel stems. |
| C | Guide sleeve adjust and release button. |
| D | Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped). |

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

E175474



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Switch ***Rear Occupant Alert*** on or off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

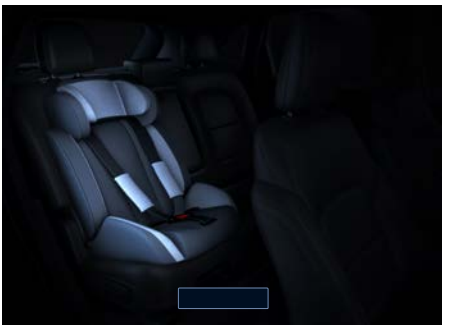
### Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



| Message |
| --- |
| Check rear seats for occupants. |

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press ***Close*** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** *Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.*

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports

The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel below the climate control.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

**Note:** *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

**Note:** *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

### Charge Only USB Ports

The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- In the frunk.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Sources***.

Press the USB option.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

### Data Transfer USB Ports

You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

### Charge Only USB Ports

You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The vehicle functions as a portable generator and can power devices that require up to the rating listed on power outlet label.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not connect any vehicle power outlets to any premises. This can create a backfeed to utility lines. Failure to follow this instruction could result in property damage, fire, electrical shock or death.

**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Power points power up during remote start.

When you switch the rear power outlet on, the vehicle power down timer is disabled and the vehicle continues to be powered on.

**Note:** *We recommend using UL approved devices for use with the power outlet.*

**Note:** *Do not exceed 2.3 kW capacity. Electrical overload can cause ground faults or system errors.*

**Note:** *Make sure there is no damage to the outlets before driving your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system.*

**Note:** *Make sure the windows of the vehicle are closed and the doors are locked if you are using the outlets and leave your vehicle unattended.*

**Note:** ***Pro Power Onboard*** *is unavailable when your vehicle is charging.*

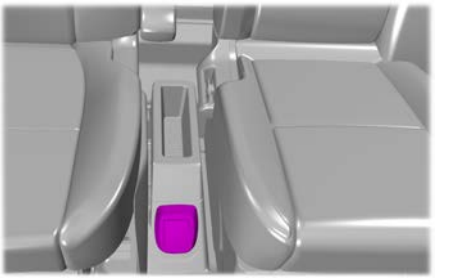
### Grounding Type

Neutral bonded: The neutral of the inverter generator is bonded to system ground. Connecting loads that also have neutral bonded to ground causes the ground fault detection to trip.

**Note:** *If additional grounding measures are required, consult with a qualified electrician.*

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

### Front Location

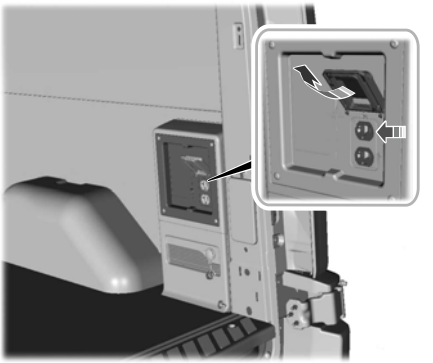


The front power outlet is on the handbrake console.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Rear Location (If Equipped)



The rear power outlets are at the rear of the vehicle.

## POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

### Power Outlet Status Indicator

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

| Indicator Status | Description |
|---|---|
| On | The power point is working and the vehicle is on. |
| Off | The power point is off and the vehicle is off. |
| Flashing | The power point is in fault mode. |

### Power Mode Indicator

The power mode indicator displays the currently used power and total available power level on the touchscreen. When you switch the power outlets off, the indicator displays a reduced available power level. When you switch the power outlets on, the indicator displays the full available power.

**Note:** *Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed on the power mode indicator.*

## SWITCHING THE REAR POWER OUTLET ON AND OFF

### Using the Center Display

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Pro Power Onboard***.
3. Switch ***Rear Outlets*** on or off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Using the Rear Outlet Control

Press the button to switch the rear outlet on and off.

## SETTING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY RESERVE LIMIT

When the vehicle is in Park (P) you can set a high voltage battery reserve limit to save a range which you can drive your vehicle before recharging.

You can set the high voltage battery reserve limit on the touchscreen.

A notification indicates when the vehicle reaches the pre-set limit and ***Pro Power Onboard*** turns off.

**Note:** *After your vehicle reaches the pre-set limit, the vehicle power down timer is enabled again See* ***What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer*** *(page 175).*

## RESETTING GROUND FAULT DETECTION

Disconnect all electrical loads before you reset the ground fault.

Use the controls on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## POWER OUTLET – TROUBLESHOOTING

### POWER OUTLET – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Item(s) plugged in exceeded the system's maximum capacity. Try unplugging one or more items and reset. See Owner's Manual for details. | Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the available power displayed. Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the vehicle on and off to reset the system. |
| Generator System is outside its operating temperature and capability is reduced. See Owner's Manual for details. | Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize the performance of the system. |
| Another power source is trying to supply power to your vehicle's AC outlets. Disconnect vehicle from that power source. See Owner's Manual for details. | Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. |
| This button tests outlets for proper operation of ground fault detection. In a successful test, Pro Power Onboard detects the ground fault and turns off. See Owner's Manual for details. | The power outlet is in fault mode. Make sure that all devices are unplugged from the system. Use the controls on the touchscreen to reset the system. Switch your vehicle on and off if the touchscreen controls are unable to reset the system. See an authorized dealer if these steps do not fix the fault. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## POWER OUTLET – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why is there a warning about something being plugged into the rear power outlet when I do not have anything plugged in?**

One or more of the rear power outlet covers could be ajar or broken. Make sure the generator is off and check the outlet covers. Select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning.

**Why can I not shift my vehicle out of Park (P)?**

Make sure the rear power outlet covers are closed and not damaged. Press OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning to be able to move the transmission from Park (P).

**What do I do when my instrument cluster display is malfunctioning and I cannot acknowledge the warning to put the transmission in Drive (D).**

Power the vehicle off and make sure nothing is plugged into the rear power outlet and all outlet covers are closed. Start the vehicle and select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning. Have your vehicle serviced soon.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that require up to the rating on the outlet cover.

**Note:** *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

**Note:** *This feature has a maximum output of 400 watts when the vehicle is in park (P).*

**Note:** *While in drive (D), the maximum outlet output is 300 watts.*

## POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

Do not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be located on both sides of the passenger seats.

## POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Indicator Status | Description |
|---|---|
| On | The power outlet is on. |
| Off | The power outlet is off. |
| Flashing | The power outlet is in fault mode. |

**Note:** *Due to different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged in.*

**Note:** *The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the Watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Open the driver door to reset the power outlet. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not plug your device back in if it exceeds the maximum outlet output.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the cargo area.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CIGAR LIGHTER PRECAUTIONS

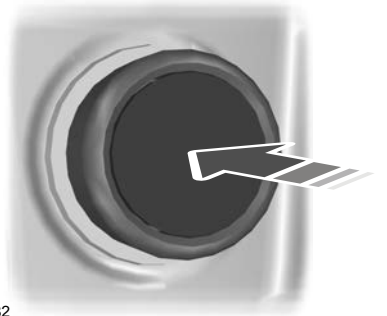
**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.*

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.*

## USING THE CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.



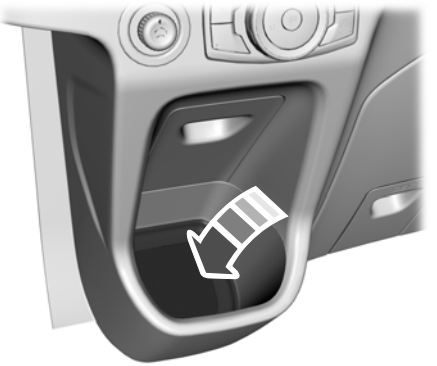
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# BOTTLE HOLDERS

## BOTTLE HOLDER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not place glass objects in the bottle holder. Items could become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## LOCATING THE BOTTLE HOLDERS



E171160

# CUP HOLDERS

## CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

# OVERHEAD STORAGE

## LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE

**WARNING:** Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

E169073

## OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

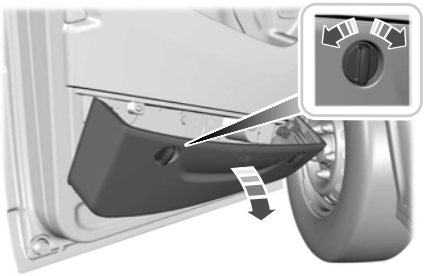
The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 20 kg (44 lb).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FRONT DOOR STORAGE

### OPENING THE FRONT DOOR STORAGE COMPARTMENT



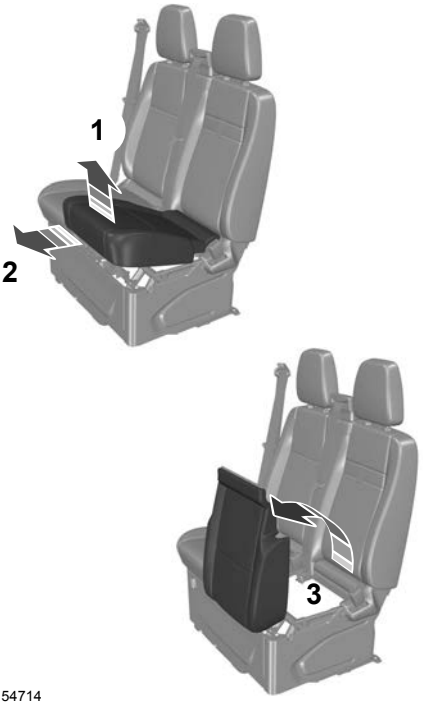
E169150

Turn the retaining clips counterclockwise.

## UNDER SEAT STORAGE

### LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT

The under seat storage compartment is under the front passenger seat.




E154714

1. Lift the front of the passenger seat cushion.
2. Pull the seat cushion forward.
3. Tilt the seat cushion forward.

**Note:** *Only the inboard seat has a storage compartment.*

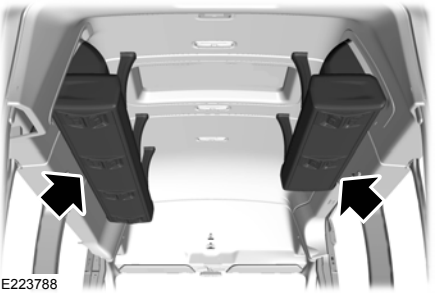


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE

### LOCATING THE REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE

**WARNING:** Do not place heavy objects on the shelf. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.


E223788

### REAR OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 18 kg (40 lb).

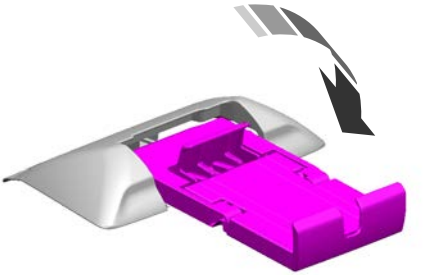
## DEVICE HOLDER

### INSTALLING AND REMOVING A DEVICE

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Fully lift the device holder.

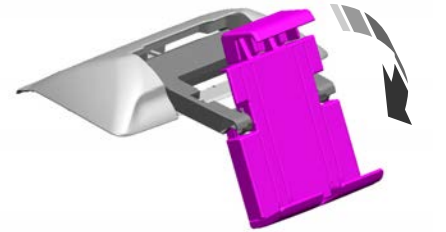
**Note:** *Make sure to pull the device holder all the way out.*



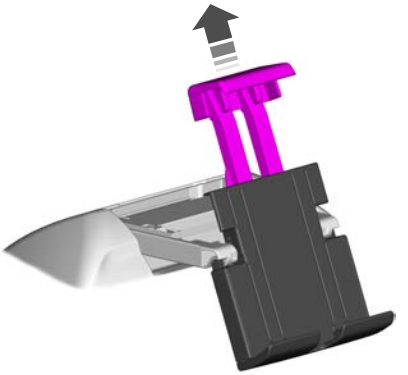
2. Bring the device holder to fully horizontal position.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



3. Fully rotate the base.



4. Lift the arm.
5. Place your device on the base.
6. Release the arm.
7. To close the device holder, reverse the opening procedure.

**Note:** *Do not leave your device in the device holder when leaving your vehicle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## IGNITION SWITCH

E247596

**Note:** *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

**Note:** *Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

### Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position ***0***.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position ***I***. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

### Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position ***II***. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position ***III***. Release the key when the engine starts.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

### Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

### Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Turn the key to position ***II***.

**Note:** *Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

3. Turn the key to position ***III***.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

### Glow Plug Indicator

If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Turn the key to position ***II***.

**Note:** *Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.*

2. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

3. Turn the key to position ***III***.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

### Glow Plug Indicator

If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

### Glow Plug Indicator

The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

### Glow Plug Indicator

The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

## STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*



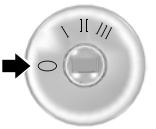
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Turn the key to position ***III*** until the engine starts.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position ***0***.

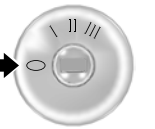
### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position ***0***.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

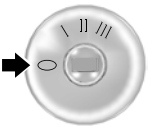
4. Press the push button ignition switch.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position ***0***.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

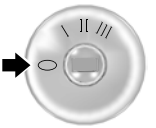
1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position ***0***.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel.

Start your vehicle as normal.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Switch ***30min max idle*** on or off.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

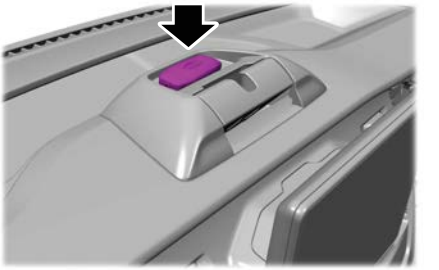
### OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the ***OK*** or ***RESET*** button during the 30-second countdown.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Cranking time exceeded | Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked. |
| Starting system malfunction | Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| No key detected | Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

**Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?**

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

**Why does the engine not crank?**

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

**Why do I experience different driving characteristics?**

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

**Why can I not start the engine?**

If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Turn the key to position ***III*** until the engine starts.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

**Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?**

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

**Why does the engine not crank?**

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

**Why do I experience different driving characteristics?**

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

**Why can I not start the engine?**

If you cannot start the engine, do the following:



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

**Why does the system not detect a passive key?**

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 170).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the information display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).

## STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button start.

## POWERING OFF

**WARNING:** Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and restart your vehicle.*

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

When your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

## RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

### Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open and close a door while your vehicle is on, the system searches for a valid remote control. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid remote control within 10 seconds.

## VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power.

### HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery power.

Start your vehicle as normal.

### SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Switch ***30min max idle*** on or off.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

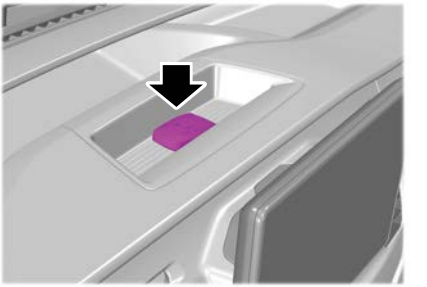
### OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the ***OK*** or ***RESET*** button during the 30-second countdown.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why does the vehicle not start?**

The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 175).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system.

It is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and $CO_2$ emissions.

## HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The system uses regenerative charging during engine braking.

It switches the engine off when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 182).

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking.

Engine braking further increases following a brake pedal press. This is normal.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and $CO_2$ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Switch ***Auto StartStop*** on or off.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear. | Shift into neutral to restart the engine. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the $CO_2$ emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and $CO_2$ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 182). The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

### SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Select ***Rolling StartStop***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** ***OFF*** *illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

**Note:** *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

### Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

**Note:** *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

3. Release the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

### Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

### Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself. |
| Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Shift into neutral. |
| Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine | The system cannot restart the engine. | Fully press the clutch pedal. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch ***MAX A/C*** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the $CO_2$ emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and $CO_2$ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle settings***.
3. Switch ***Auto StartStop*** on or off.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal to restart the engine. |
| Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine | The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. | Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Condition | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine | The system is not functioning. | Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself. |
| Auto StartStop Manual restart required | The system is not functioning. | Restart the engine yourself. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the $CO_2$ emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - HYDROTREATED VEGETABLE OIL

**WARNING:** Do not mix hydrotreated vegetable oil with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use hydrotreated vegetable oil that meets the specification defined by EN 15940 or the relevant national specification.

**Note:** *Do not use normal vegetable oil as this could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL

**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

**Note:** *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

**Note:** *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment or in the front right-hand side stepwell storage compartment.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 190).

**Note:** *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** *If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.*

**Note:** *You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.*

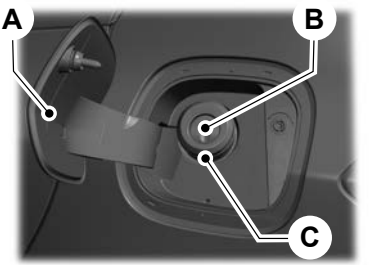
**Note:** *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# REFUELING

## REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW




A Fuel filler door.
B Fuel filler inlet.
C Fuel tank filler pipe.

## REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

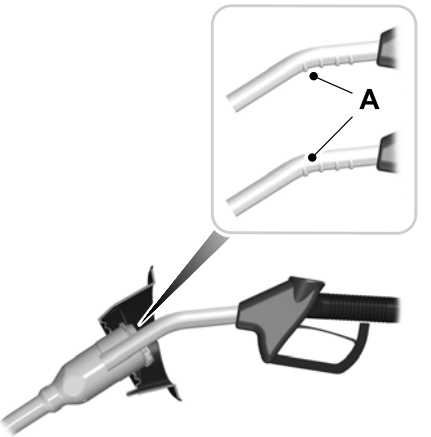
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

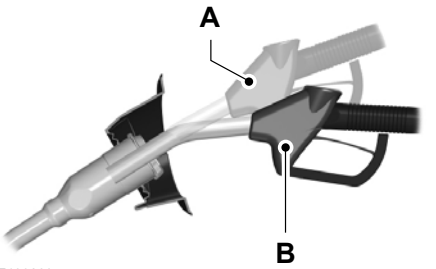
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

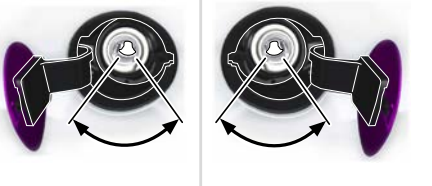



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.




E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| Vehicles with standard fuel tank. | 70 L (15.4 gal) |
| Vehicles with larger fuel tank. | 95 L (20.9 gal) |

## FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

### Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

| Low | Medium | High | Extra-High | Combined | $CO_2$ Emissions |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | L/100 km (mpg) | g/km |
| 13.4–6.7 (21–42) | 12.3–5.7 (23–50) | 12.7–5.6 (22–50) | 17.1–5.7 (17–50) | 13.9–5.9 (20–48) | 154–364 |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

### FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Fuel level low | An early reminder of a low fuel condition. |
| Check fuel fill inlet | The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed. |
| Fuel door open Close fully to avoid ""Check Engine"" light | A reminder to close the fuel door. Failure to follow this instruction can cause the check engine light to illuminate. |
| Refuel error See manual | There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

## HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

### Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

### Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**WARNING:** When the ***Exhaust filter cleaning*** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

**Note:** *Avoid running out of fuel.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

### WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

**Note:** *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Stay clear of the exhaust tailpipe during regeneration. Hot exhaust gases can burn you badly.

You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display.

**Note:** *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m (10–15 ft) away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h (25 mph), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start with your vehicle engine and when it has reached the normal operating temperature, press the information display control button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 112).

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning appears in the information display. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 199). Answer yes to this prompt and then follow the next prompts regarding exhaust position required to initiate manual regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display confirms the operation has started and when it has finished. You can also drive to clean the filter.

When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the service engine warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. You must have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases to approximately 1600 rpm and the cooling fan speed increases. You will hear a change in audible sound due to engine speed and cooling fan speed increases.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS

If filter service is required, the engine control system warning lamp illuminates in the information display.

If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, the engine control system warning lamp and a service engine soon warning lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Exhaust filter cleaning | Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. |
| Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean | The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 48 km/h (30 mph) until the message turns off. |
| Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now | |
| Exhaust filter at limit Clean now | The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 48 km/h (30 mph) until the message turns off. |
| Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now | |
| Exhaust filter drive completed | Your diesel particulate filter is clean. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Exhaust filter cleaned | Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only). |
| Exhaust filter cleaning stopped | The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only). |
| Exhaust filter over limit Service now | You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Selective catalytic reduction is an engine emission control system that reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system.

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.

**WARNING:** Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.

**WARNING:** Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

**Note:** *The use and refilling of AdBlue® is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store the AdBlue® container in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5ºC (23ºF) and 20ºC (68ºF).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

- Do not store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.
- AdBlue® is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

## FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

### FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

**Note:** *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

### FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

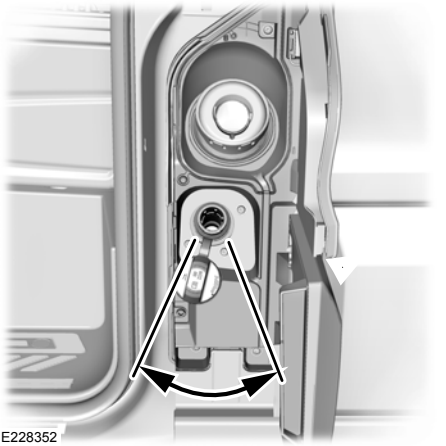
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

E144358

2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing


E228352

4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

**Note:** *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.
3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

**Note:** *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle maintenance***.
3. Select ***DEF gauge***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle maintenance***.
3. Select ***DEF level***.

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

## ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| All. | 22.4 L (4.9 gal) |

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| AdBlue®<br>HAMJ-M99C130-xx | WSS-M99C130-A |

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### AdBlue® Level

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon<br>AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km<br>AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls | Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine | The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. |

**Note:** *When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.*

**Note:** *If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.*

### AdBlue® Malfunction

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| AdBlue® system malfunction Service required | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km<br>AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls | Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| AdBlue® system Service required to start engine | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power the vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

## PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

### Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. We recommend to set your preferred charging times to start at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to be less than 100% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This not only warm or cool the cabin but also condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

### DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. See **What is DC Charging** (page 209).

### Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0ºC (32ºF) and 45ºC (113ºF) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Plug in your vehicle at temperatures just above the freezing point or lower to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Storage State of Charge

You can increase the battery life by maintaining your state of charge below 100%. When you park your vehicle for an extended period of 30 days or more, we recommend your battery be at an approximately 50% state of charge. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

**Note:** *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See* ***Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences*** *(page 232).*

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

## ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

| Electric Range City | Electric Range | Electric Energy Consumption | Weighted, Combined $CO_2$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| km (mi) | km (mi) | kWh/100km (mi/kWh) | g/km |
| 307 - 427 (190 - 265) | 210 - 326 (130 - 202) | 25.1 - 37.5 (2.4 - 1.6) | 0 |

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS AC CHARGING

AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

## WHAT IS DC CHARGING

DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your FordPass App.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

**Note:** *Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.*

**Note:** *The DC charging rate could be reduced to maximize the life of the battery.*

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the charging equipment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**WARNING:** Install charging equipment in compliance with local regulations. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, serious personal injury or death.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT

**WARNING:** Read all warnings on the charging equipment before using for the first time.

**WARNING:** Read all instructions in this publication before using the charging equipment.

**WARNING:** Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. The wall outlet must be in good condition and meet up-to-date local codes. Have a qualified electrician check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, or death.

**WARNING:** It is recommended that electrical outlets for use with your charging equipment be installed by a licensed, qualified electrician. Installations must comply with the provisions of all local codes. Failure to follow this warning could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do NOT DROP the control box or coupler.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Do NOT use if stored outside temperature range specified.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to repair the charging equipment. Contact your local dealer for assistance.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of fire, connect only to a circuit provided with 40 amps maximum branch circuit overcurrent protection installed in accordance with NEC and local electrical code.

**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment with an extension cord, surge protector, timer or other adapter. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or fire.

**WARNING:** The wall plug must fit firmly into the outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the outlet is damaged, have a qualified electrician replace the outlet. Using charging equipment with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock.

**WARNING:** Fully insert the plug into the wall outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock.

**WARNING:** Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging equipment while plugged in.

**WARNING:** Do not put fingers into the electric charge coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock.

**WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.

**WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Failure to follow this instruct can cause damage to the charging equipment.

**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F).

**WARNING:** Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F).

**WARNING:** Do not plug the charging equipment into an electrical outlet that is submerged in water or covered in snow.

**WARNING:** Do not use charging equipment in severe rain, snow or electrical storm.

**WARNING:** Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, or serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** When using the charging equipment avoid moisture, water, snow and foreign objects at all times.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Do not replace the plug on the connector. There are critical safety devices in the plug, and the charging equipment will not operate, if the plug is replaced. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, death, or fire.

**WARNING:** Charging equipment contains no user modifiable or repairable parts. If the charging equipment plug does not properly fit into the wall outlet, have a qualified electrician install the correct wall outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution service panel. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged.

**WARNING:** Keep charging equipment inside when not in use. Stow the control box on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.

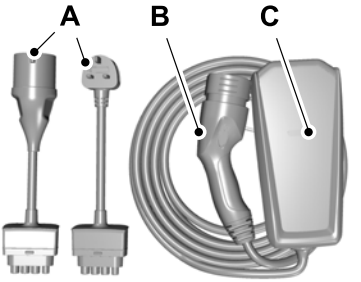
## Universal Home Charge Cord (If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with a universal home charge cord that has a low power and a high power connector to use with 230V outlets. Availability and connector type vary by market.

| Specification Type | Specification Value |
|---|---|
| Charger Model | IEC |
| Voltage | 230 VAC |
| Maximum Current | 32 amps max continuous |
| Frequency | 50Hz |
| Power draw when idle | < 2 Watts |
| Power draw when charging | < 4 Watts |
| Cable length | 6.1 m (20 ft) |
| Weight | 4.2 kg (9.3 lb) |
| Operating temperature | -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F) |
| Storage temperature | -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F) |
| CCID Environmental | IP67 |
| Ventilation | Not required |
| Maximum Altitude | 4000m |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




A Connector.

B Coupler.

C Control Box.

The universal home charge cord is located under the passenger seat and allows you charge the high voltage battery using a standard household outlet.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and appropriate AC outlet.

**Note:** *To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.*

**Note:** *Follow the installation instructions provided with the charging unit.*

**Note:** *We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.*

**Note:** *Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.*

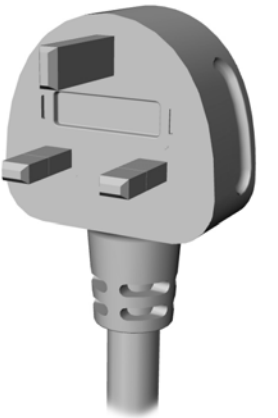
**Note:** *If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.*

**Note:** *The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.*

**Note:** *Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.*

**Note:** *If the bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.*

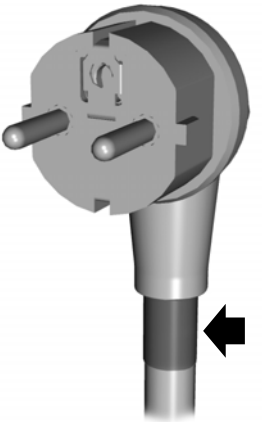
### Charge Connector Types

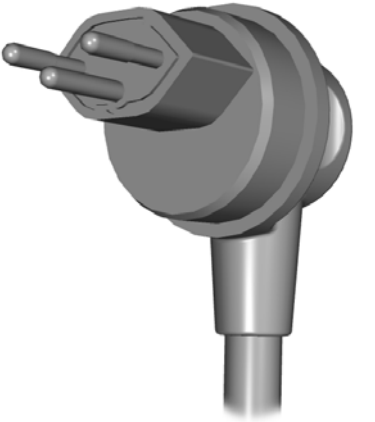


UK, Ireland



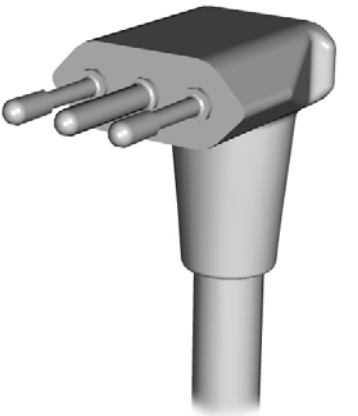
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing





| | |
|---|---|
| No color band: | Austria, Belgium, Czech Republic, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Netherlands, Portugal, Poland, Romania, Spain, Sweden, Turkey |
| Blue color band: | Finland, France |
| Orange color band: | Norway |

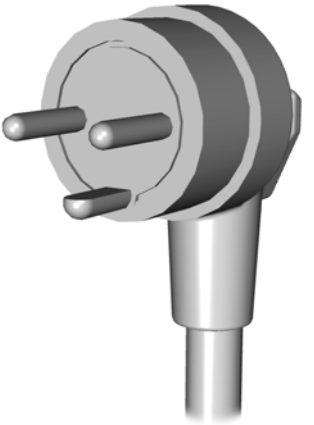
Switzerland



Italy

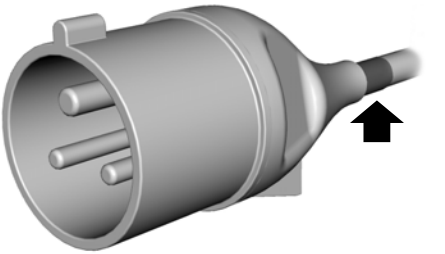


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



Denmark

**High Power Connector**

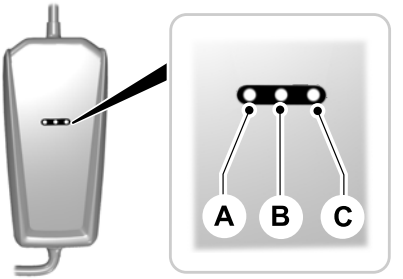


| | |
|---|---|
| No color band: | Denmark, Italy, Switzerland, UK, Ireland, Belgium, Czech Republic, Finland, France, Greece, Hungary, Portugal, Poland, Romania, Spain, Turkey |
| Blue Color band: | Austria, Germany, Netherlands, Sweden |
| Orange color band: | Norway |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Universal Home Charge Cord Indicator Lights**




A Amber Fault Indicator Light.
B Blue Status Indicator Light.
C Red Trouble Indicator Light.

| Universal Home Charge Cord Fault Indicator Type | Indicator Description |
|---|---|
| AMBER | The amber fault indicator illuminates to communicate that the charging unit is rebooting after an error. |
| BLUE | When plugged into the outlet, the blue indicator illuminates to communicate that the charging unit is ready to use. |
| RED | The red indicator illuminates when the charging unit has detected an error. If the red indicator is illuminated, the charging unit will not deliver power to the vehicle. The error must be corrected before a charging cycle can begin or continue. |

**Note:** *When first plugged into a AC outlet, the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle will happen twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | MODE | ACTION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| OFF | OFF | OFF | UNPOWERED; The universal home charge cord is not powered. | Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Make sure the connector is fully inserted into universal home charge cord. Make sure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| OFF | PULSING | OFF | CHARGING; The universal home charge cord is charging. | No action required. |
| OFF | ON | OFF | STANDBY; The universal home charge cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the universal home charge cord is not charging the vehicle. | If you expect the universal home charge cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, have your vehicle checked. |
| ON | ON | ON | REBOOTING; The universal home charge cord is recovering after encountering an error. | Wait for the universal home charge cord to return to standby. If the universal home charge cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | MODE | ACTION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ON | PULSING | OFF | CHARGING REDUCED; The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating. | Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| 1 FLASH | PULSING | OFF | CHARGING REDUCED, AC PLUG OR AC OUTLET; The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the AC outlet. | Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| ON | OFF | OFF | USER TROUBLESHOOTING; The universal home charge cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting. | Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| AMBER | BLUE | RED | MODE | ACTION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| OFF | OFF | ON | NON - RECOVERABLE FAULT; There is an internal fault in the universal home charge cord that cannot be recovered. | Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, have your vehicle checked. |
| OFF | OFF | 1 FLASH | NON - RECOVERABLE FAULT; There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered. | Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact us about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your authorized dealer. |
| OFF | OFF | PULSING | GROUND LEAKAGE FAULT; Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path. | Potential shock hazard - immediately turn off circuit breaker for the outlet within home. Do not use the charging unit. Contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. |

**Note:** *When plugging into an unfamiliar AC outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator will illuminate if it is not charging. The charging unit will turn off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford Pass App.*

### Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle will be charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charging unit ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charging unit will attempt to restart 15 minutes after an interruption event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charging unit shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

### Public Charge Cord (If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located under the passenger seat.

You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Connecting the Charger** (page 221).

## MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the charging unit after charging. Store the charging unit in the storage bag supplied with it when not in use.

When charging is complete, replace the charging unit under the passenger seat.

**Note:** *Do not hold the charging unit by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.*

**Note:** *To remove the connector of the universal home charge cord, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.*

## CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the charging unit. Do not place stress on the charge cables. If the charging unit overheats, remove it from direct sunlight.

## SAFETY FEATURES

The charging unit includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

Service Ground Check:

- The charging unit constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the red indicator turns on and shuts down power to the vehicle.

Thermal Event Sensor:

- The charging unit senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.

GFCI Protection:

- The charging unit has a ground fault circuit interruption reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charging unit detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and illuminate the red indicator.

Insulation:

- The charging unit, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.

Unintentional Disconnection:

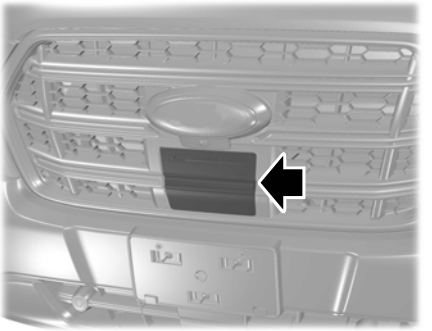
- The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is on the front of the vehicle. To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



**Note:** *Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.*

## CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the state of charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the state of charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the state of charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the state of charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the state of charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the state of charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the state of charge is 100 percent.

**Note:** *When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.*

**Note:** *If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is On. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can turn it Off. Locate the charge port light under the vehicle settings on your in-vehicle touchscreen.*

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Amber is used to indicate charge faults.

**Note:** *Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.*

**Note:** *If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.*

**Note:** *If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or universal home charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the universal home charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.*

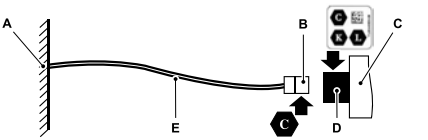
## AC CHARGING

### CONNECTING THE CHARGER

**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

### Charging In Public

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.




| | |
|---|---|
| A | AC charge station. |
| B | Charge coupler. |
| C | Vehicle. |
| D | Charge port receptacle. |
| E | Cable. |

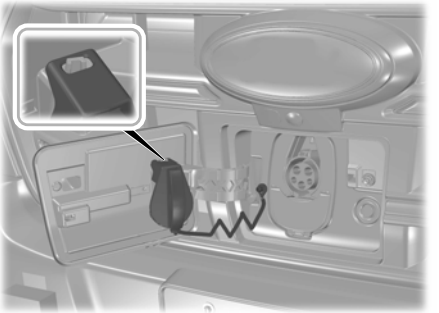
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*

2. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



3. Remove the charge port dust cap and hang it on the pin.

4. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** *Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See* ***Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences*** *(page 232).*

**Note:** *When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.*

**Note:** *There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.*

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the FordPass app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a FordPass Charging Network station, use the FordPass App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the FordPass Charging Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

## Charging At Home (If Equipped)

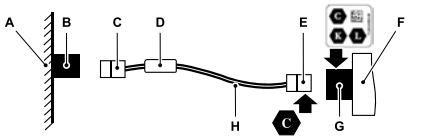
**CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE -** The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

When using a household outlet and the universal home charge cord, connect the equipment as shown and plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.




A Mains.
B Socket Outlet (Household).
C Plug.
D Control box.
E Charge coupler.
F Vehicle.
G Charge port receptacle.
H Universal home charge cord.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

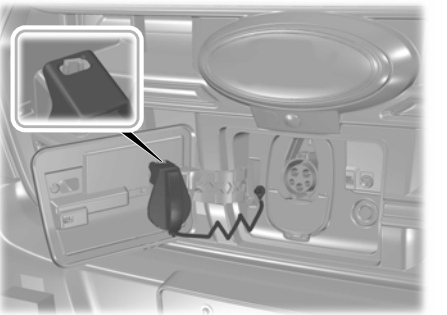
**Note:** *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*

2. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

**Note:** *To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable and plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.*

3. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
4. Confirm that the control box indicators illuminate.

5. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



6. Remove the charge port dust cap and hang it on the pin.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

7. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** *Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See* ***Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences*** *(page 232).*

**Note:** *Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.*

**Note:** *When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.*

**Note:** *There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.*

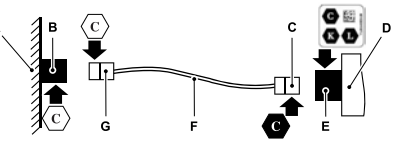
**Note:** *If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.*

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

## Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord (If Equipped)

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.




| | |
|---|---|
| A | AC charge station. |
| B | Charge station port. |
| C | Vehicle charge coupler. |
| D | Vehicle. |
| E | Charge port receptacle. |
| F | Public charge cable. |
| G | Charge station charge coupler. |

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*

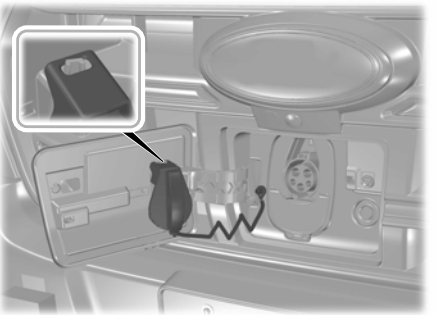
2. Select the appropriate charge station port.
3. Plug your charge station charge coupler into the charge station port.

**Note:** *To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

4. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



5. Remove the charge port dust cap and hang it on the pin.

6. Plug the vehicle charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** *Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See* ***Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences*** *(page 232).*

**Note:** *When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.*

**Note:** *There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.*

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the FordPass app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a FordPass Charging Network station, use the FordPass App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the FordPass Charging Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

## STOPPING CHARGING

**WARNING:** To safely discontinue charging at any time, follow the disconnect instructions in stopping charging. Charging will automatically and safely come to a stop. The BLUE STATUS indicator remains ON solid when the coupler is removed.

### Stopping Charging in Public

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring.

**Note:** *You cannot unlock the charge coupler unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

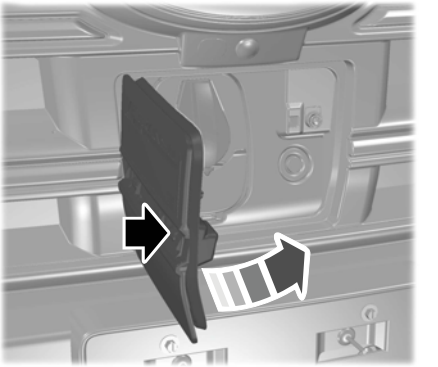
**Note:** *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.*

**Note:** *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.*

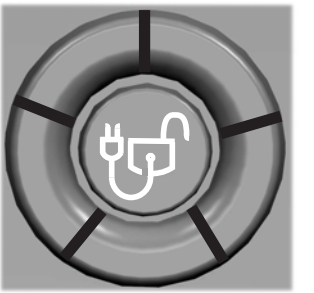
**Note:** *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.*

2. Remove the charge coupler from your vehicle.
3. Reinstall the dust cap.



4. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

### Stopping Charging at Home (If Equipped)



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring.

**Note:** *You cannot unlock the charge coupler unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.*

**Note:** *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.*

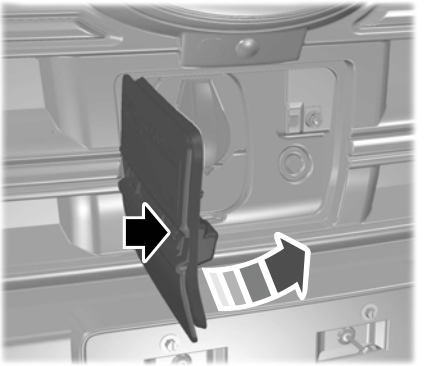
**Note:** *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.*

2. Remove the charge coupler from your vehicle.
3. Remove the connector plug from the wall outlet.
4. Remove the connector from the control box.

**Note:** *To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.*

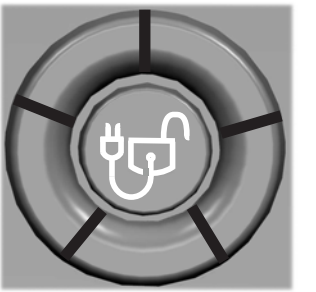
**Note:** *Do not pull the wall plug from the wall or the connector from the universal home charger control box when your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.*

5. Reinstall the dust cap.



6. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

## Stopping Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord (If Equipped)



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring.

**Note:** *You cannot unlock the charge coupler unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*



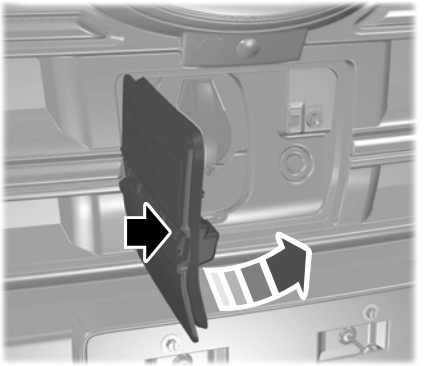
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.*

**Note:** *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.*

**Note:** *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.*

2. Remove the charge coupler from your vehicle.
3. Remove your charge station charge coupler from the charge station port.
4. Reinstall the dust cap.



5. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

### Charge Coupler Manual Release

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

See **Stopping Charging** (page 230).

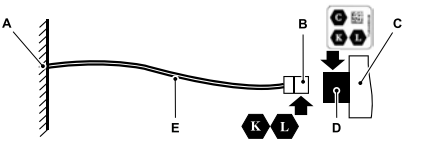
## DC CHARGING

### CONNECTING THE CHARGER

**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

To charge the high-voltage battery at a DC charge station:

When using a DC charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.




A DC charge station.
B Charge coupler.
C Vehicle.
D Charge port receptacle.
E Cable.

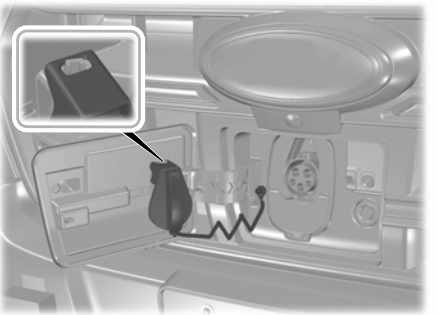
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.*

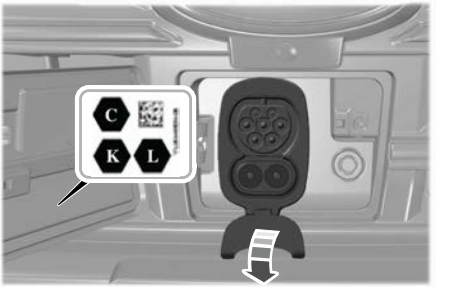


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



3. Remove the charge port dust cap and hang it on the pin.




4. Open the additional dust cap on the charge port to expose lower connectors.

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** *Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *When the charge coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.*

**Note:** *The vehicle will monitor battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing DC fast charge rate to protect battery hardware from damage and maintain battery health.*

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the FordPass app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

## STOPPING CHARGING

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring.

**Note:** *You cannot unlock the charge coupler unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

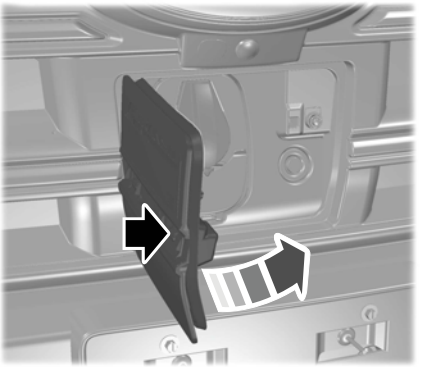
**Note:** *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

**Note:** *You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.*

**Note:** *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.*

**Note:** *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.*

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from your vehicle
3. Close the dust cap for the lower connectors.
4. Reinstall the dust cap for the upper connectors.



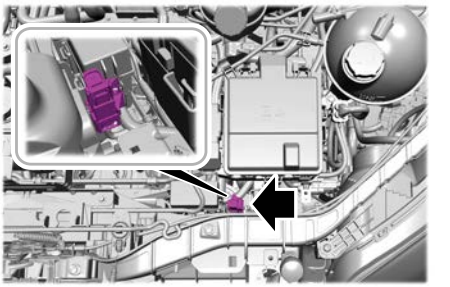
5. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

### Charge Coupler Manual Release

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

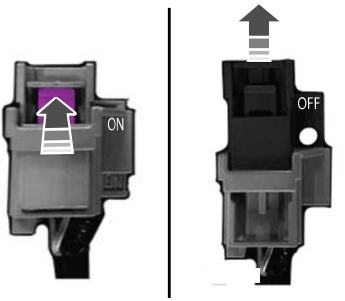
1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.



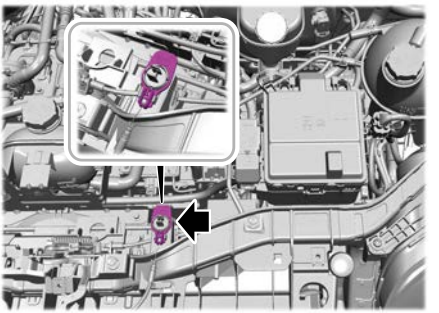


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

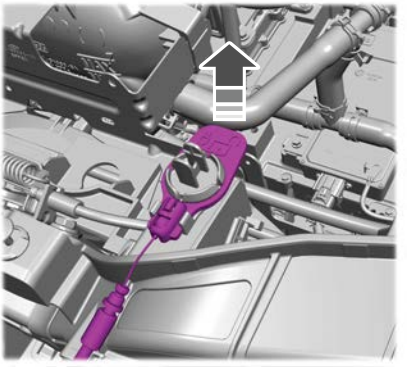
3. Locate the low voltage service disconnect.



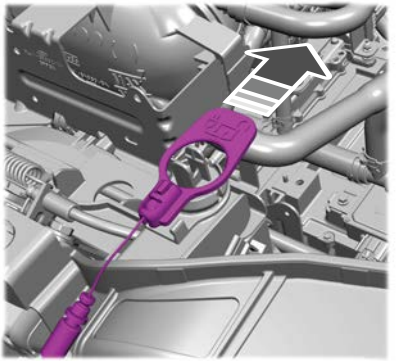

4. Press the latch and pull the low voltage service disconnect to the off position.



5. Locate the yellow manual release ring.



6. Pull the manual release ring upward to detach from grommet.



7. Pull the manual release ring lightly in the direction shown.

**Note:** *Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 5 cm (2 in).*

8. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
9. Reinstall the manual release ring to the grommet.

**Note:** *Make sure the cable is not twisted.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

10. Push the low voltage service disconnect to the on position.
11. Close the hood.

**Note:** *The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release cable resets.*

**Note:** *If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.*

## SETTING THE CHARGING SCHEDULE AND PREFERENCES

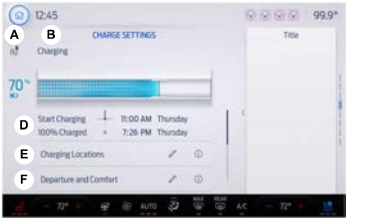
You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower-cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set an upper charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up in the on vehicle display or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

### Charge Settings Screen




A Charge status icon.
B Charge status.
C High voltage battery state of charge.
D Charging time information.
E Charging location preferences.
F Departure and comfort preferences.

### Charge Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.

Not charging due to a fault.

Not currently charging.

Charging.

Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

### Charge Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Charge Status | Action |
|---|---|
| Will charge when plugged in | The vehicle is unplugged and will start charging once plugged in. |
| Will wait for preferred charge time | The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charge times enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time. |
| Waiting for preferred charge time | The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charge times enabled. Charging will start at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings. |
| Charging stopped | The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the FordPass app. |
| Charging | The vehicle is plugged in and charging. |
| Fast charging | The vehicle is plugged into a DC Fast Charge station and charging. |
| Charged | The vehicle finished charging to the target state of charge setting. |
| Charging 12V battery | The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery. |
| Cabin conditioning | The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings. |
| Battery conditioning | The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery. |
| Vehicle charge fault | The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Charge Status | Action |
|---|---|
| Charge station fault | The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply. |
| Charge station not detected | A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source. |
| Charge station paused | The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station. |

### High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

### Charging Time Information

When charging, the charge start and estimated end times are displayed.

When fast charging and the battery state of charge is less than 80%, the charging end time is estimated to 80%. Once the battery state of charge reaches 80%, the estimated charge end time will change to 100%.

When your vehicle is at a stored charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

**Note:** *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times. See* ***Charging Your Vehicle*** *(page 209).*

### Charging Locations

Press the edit button to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

**Note:** *Your vehicle will charge during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level set for this location by your next departure time.*

**Note:** *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*

#### Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.

Press the edit button for charging locations on the charge settings screen.

1. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations. If the previously saved charge locations are not listed, then you must first select add new location. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *In order to save a charge location, the vehicle must have previously charged at that location.*

2. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge level. Press next.

**Note:** *Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.*

**Note:** *Charging will stop when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge level setting.*

3. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel. You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows). Press next once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.

**Note:** *Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.*

4. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press the left arrow to go back and change your settings. Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name, and the charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

**Note:** *Reaching your max charge level by your next departure time is always the priority. When charge times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle will typically begin charging right away after plugging in. Charging will pause when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charge windows.*

## Departure and Comfort

Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

**Note:** *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.*

**Note:** *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort on the charge settings screen.
2. Select a time for each day of the week you want your settings to apply. Select the hour and minutes as well as your desired comfort level. Your selected days/times now display your departure and comfort settings. Press Save to apply your settings. The next departure display on the charge settings screen will update appropriately.

**Note:** *Save your departure settings before selecting additional days/times. The process must be repeated in order to add additional unique departure times and comfort levels.*

**Note:** *Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.*

Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.

A Charging location name.

B Next departure time and cabin temperature.

A On/Off switch for charging locations.

B On/Off switch for departure and comfort.

### Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a stored charging location.

### Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

**Note:** *If the charging locations switch is off, the target state of charge returns to 100%.*

### On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

## USING FORDPASS AND CHARGING

The FordPass App allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the FordPass Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Ford Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit *www.owner.ford.com*.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE HINTS

We recommend limiting the amount of DC charges, and ending DC charges at 80% state of charge as charging between 80 and 100% can incur high charging costs due to the time to completion.

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the outside temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging will allow the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

**Note:** *When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.*

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when the outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery at the best condition for your next drive.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS

Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Supply Type | Standard | Configuration | Type of Accessory | Voltage Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| AC | EN 62196-2 | Type 2 | Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port. | Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS |

Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

| Supply Type | Standard | Configuration | Type of Accessory | Voltage Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| AC | EN 62196-2 | Type 2 | Charge station port, public charge cord coupler. | Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS |

Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

| Supply Type | Standard | Configuration | Type of Accessory | Voltage Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DC | EN 62196-3 | FF | Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler. | 50 volt to 500 volt |

Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

| Supply Type | Standard | Configuration | Type of Accessory | Voltage Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DC | EN 62196-3 | FF | Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler. | 200 volt to 920 volt |

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS

It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Vehicle plugged in? Yes No | Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle. |
| Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery | Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state. |
| Charge Station Fault See Manual | Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply. |
| Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider | Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why does my vehicle not charge with the mobile charger?**

Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from the vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is connected properly into the mobile charger control box. If the mobile charger is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

**Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?**

A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

**Why does my information display say that the vehicle is charged when it is still pulling power from the charging source?**

In order to keep your battery at the current level, a small amount of power needs to be sourced from the wall to power the vehicle electronics. Once the vehicle is shut down, the vehicle will stop drawing power.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

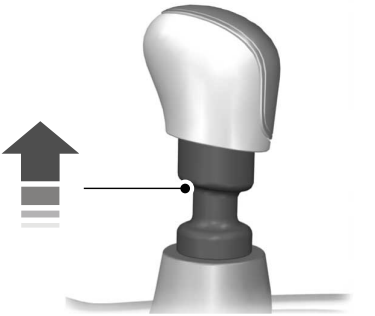
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

## SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS

It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

## CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249).

## CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2 |

# MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit power, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle.*

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### PARK (P)

**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** *A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).*

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See* ***Jump Starting the Vehicle*** *(page 359).*

**Note:** *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown. See* ***Fuses*** *(page 372).*

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.*

### REVERSE (R)

**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### NEUTRAL (N)

**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

### DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### LOW (L)

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

**Note:** *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See* ***Towing a Trailer*** *(page 347).*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The transmission selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

**Note:** *The position illuminates on the transmission selector.*

3. Press the low (L) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

**Note:** *Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counter-clockwise rotation.*

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

P R N D L

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WHAT IS TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

### TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the low (L) button.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.*

### EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt and exit the driver seat.

### AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park could not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt buckle switch is malfunctioning.

## BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WHAT IS BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

Brake shift interlock prevents you from shifting out of park (P) when you have switched the ignition on and not pressed the brake pedal.

### BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

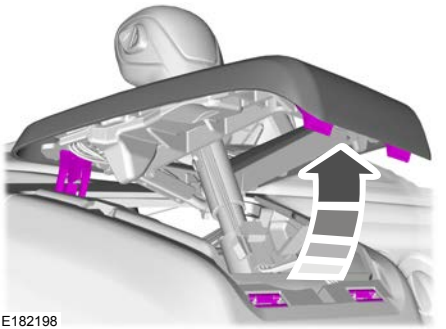
**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### USING BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

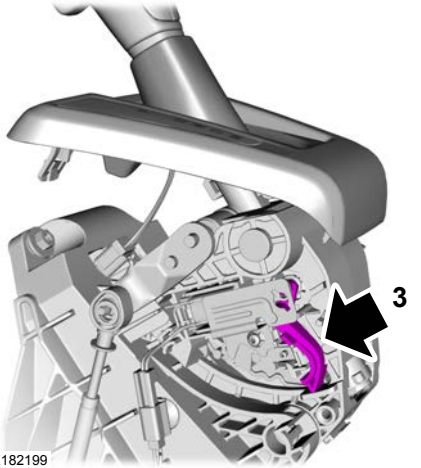


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



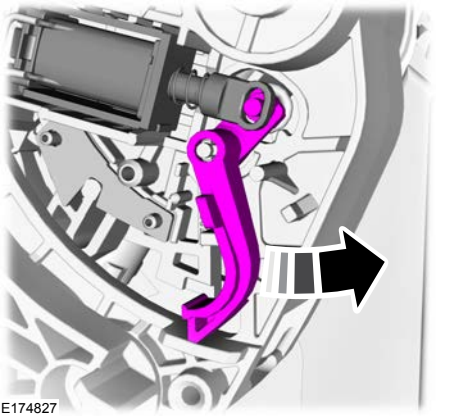
E182198

1. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, remove the panel.




E182199

2. Locate the brake shift interlock lever.



E174827

3. Push the brake shift interlock lever toward the rear of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and you have not moved the transmission selector to park (P).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/10-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Transmission Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Transmission not in Park | Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P). |
| Press brake to unlock selector lever | Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 354).

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds that can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice, proceed with care.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| AWD Temporarily Disabled | The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating. |
| AWD Off | The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. |
| AWD Restored | The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 389).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID

**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the ***MIN*** mark or above the ***MAX*** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brakes** (page 249).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 250).

# BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

## BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE

The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

## BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?**

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

**Note:** *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning Wheels*** *(page 424).*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

## PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

**Note:** *When applied, the parking brake lever will return to the completely down position and a warning lamp will illuminate.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

## PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

## PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

**Note:** *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.*

**Note:** *When applied, the parking brake lever will return to the completely down position and a warning lamp will illuminate.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

## PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Park brake applied | You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

The switch is next to the steering wheel on the lower part of the instrument panel.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See* ***Park (P)*** *(page 243).*

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

The switch is next to the steering wheel on the lower part of the instrument panel.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

1. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

**Note:** *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

### Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Fasten the driver seatbelt.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

The red warning lamp illuminates when the electronic parking brake is applied or for a few seconds on start up.

If it remains illuminated or flashes when the electronic parking brake is not applied, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Park brake malfunction Service now | The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Park Brake not released | The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Park brake not applied | The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Park brake Use switch to release | The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake. |
| Park brake press brake and switch to release | You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake. |
| Park brake Limited function Service required | The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Park brake System overheated | The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down. |
| Park brake off | The electric parking brake is released. |
| Release park brake | The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Park brake on | The electric parking brake is applied. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

The system uses sensors on the rear of your vehicle to detect a possible collision and applies the brakes to either reduce the damage from impact, or to assist in avoiding the collision.

## HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST WORK

Reverse Braking Assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 1.5–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply in order to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

**Note:** *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

**Note:** *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, switch the system off manually after you connect the trailer.*

**Note:** *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

## SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Reverse Brake Assist*** on or off.

**Note:** *The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid, cross traffic alert or traction control is off.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.*

**Note:** *The default setting is on in some regions.*

## OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply. Bring your vehicle to a stop a safe distance away from the obstacle.

A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual | Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible. |
| Reverse Brake Assist malfunction | Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Reverse Brake Assist off | Displays when reverse brake assist is off. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse braking assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse braking assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off** (page 260).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on if equipped. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 323).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 270).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 266).

**Note:** *The traction control automatically turns off if four-wheel drive low and certain drive modes such as mud/ruts and snow/sand is activated.*

- The vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Contact an authorized dealer to have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse braking assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, contact an authorized dealer.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert and rear parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 323). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 270).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse braking assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse braking assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Hill Start Assist Not Available | Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto Hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you stop it and release the brake pedal. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF

**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.

Press the button on the instrument panel.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.*

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See* ***Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 257).*

**Note:** *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You have not fastened your seatbelt.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS

Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Press the traction control button on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains partially active.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See* ***What Is MyKey*** *(page 61).*

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Traction Control*** on or off.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See* ***What Is MyKey*** *(page 61).*

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

It illuminates when you switch the system off.

## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

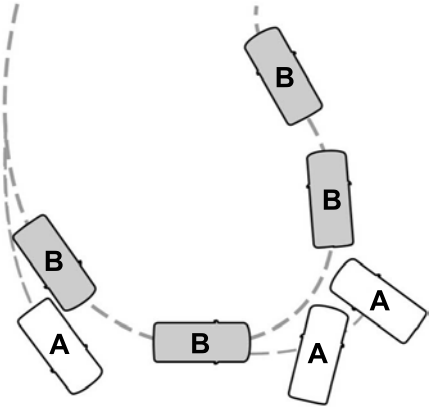
| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Traction control off | The status of the traction control system after you switched it off. |
| Traction control on | The status of the traction control system after you switched it on. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.




A Without stability control.
B With stability control.

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR

If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** *Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.*

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** *When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 61).*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

Press the parking aid button and use the menu to turn the system on and off.

The system can also be turned off using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

### LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS

The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

### FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

### LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS

The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

### FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

## SIDE PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

### SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

**Note:** *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

### LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS

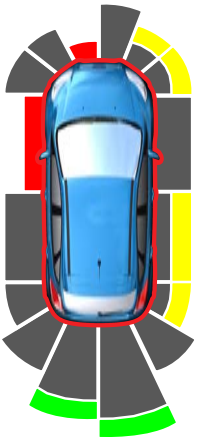
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

### SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

## PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

## PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Park Pilot malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Check Park Pilot | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual | A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Check front Park Pilot | The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Check rear Park Pilot | The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front Park Pilot On Off | Displays the park aid status. |
| Rear Park Pilot On Off | Displays the park aid status. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

## REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

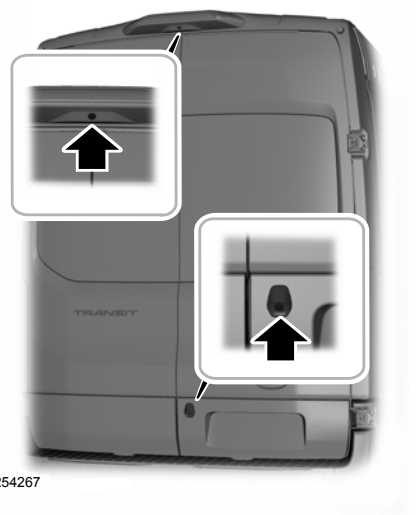
The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



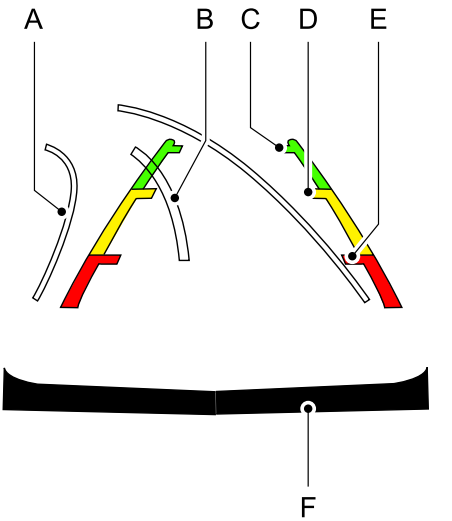

E254267

The rear view camera is below the central high mounted stop lamp or on the rear cargo door.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

**Note:** *Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*




| | |
|---|---|
| A | Active guide lines. |
| B | Centerline. |
| C | Fixed guide line: Green zone. |
| D | Fixed guide line: Yellow zone. |
| E | Fixed guide line: Red zone. |
| F | Rear bumper. |

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

## REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT

**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF

You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Rear View Camera***.
4. Switch ***Rear View Camera Delay*** on or off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

**Note:** *Use caution if a door is ajar. The 360 degree camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.*

## LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

### Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is below the central high mounted stop lamp or on the rear cargo door. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

### Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.



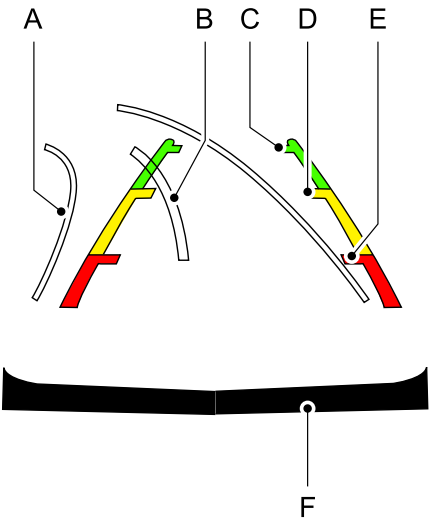
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** *Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



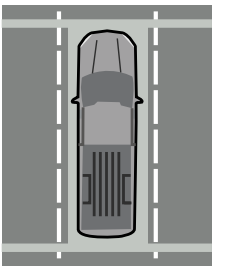

A Active guide lines.
B Centerline.
C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

### Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

**Note:** *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front images display when the button is pressed. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when the button is pressed.

**Note:** *The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

## SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW

Press to access the different camera views.

Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.

Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.

Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.

Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.

Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.

Zooms in on the 360 degree image.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

The active park assist button is next to the gearshift lever.

Press the button to activate active park assist. Press again to switch between parking modes.

### Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

**Note:** *It also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).*

#### Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

**Note:** *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

**Note:** *Active park assist also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).*

#### Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it could under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

**Note:** *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

## ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE

1. Press the active park assist button.

**Note:** *The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.*

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

## ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE

1. Press the active park assist button twice.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

**Note:** *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

**Note:** *When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## EXITING A PARKING SPACE

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
4. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Active Park Fault | The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why does active park assist not operate correctly?**

The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

**Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?**

You have switched traction control off.

**Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?**

The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away from your vehicle.

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The parking space length, or position of parked objects, changes after your vehicle passes the space.

**Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph in imperial units and 20 km/h in metric units.

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On

Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off

Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.*

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

Press the buttons to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *The set speed appears in the instrument cluster display.*

### Changing the Set Speed

Press the button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Press the button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED

Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch the system on.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

### When Following a Vehicle

**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

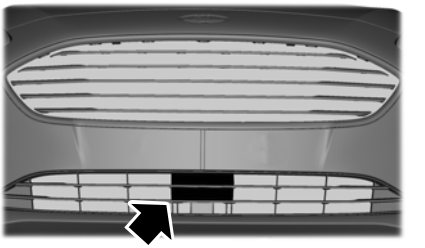
**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

**Note:** *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

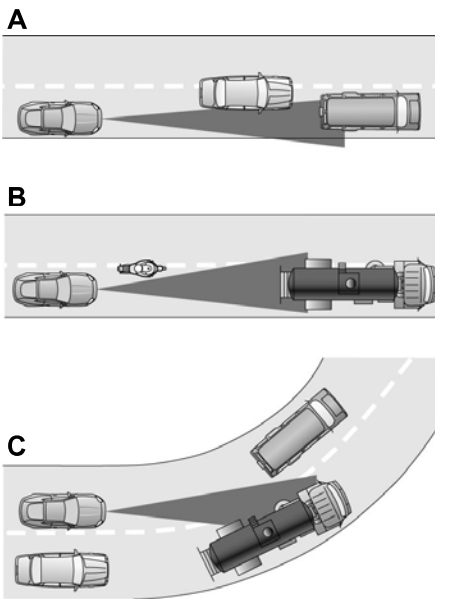


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 295).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

**Detection Issues Can Occur:**




A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 286).

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** *If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.*

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

**Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings**

| Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles | Gap Distance | Dynamic Behavior |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Closest. | Sport. |
| 2 | Close. | Normal. |
| 3 | Medium. | Normal. |
| 4 | Far. | Comfort. |

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

### Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

**Note:** *The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL

**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Cruise control***.
4. Select ***Mode***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

### HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations.

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

### INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

### INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Cruise control***.
4. Select ***Mode***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Cruise control***.
4. Select ***Tolerance***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

E265663

If you select this mode, a bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the instrument cluster display.

# ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

**Note:** *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility. |
| Adaptive cruise control not available | Displays when the system is not available. |
| Adaptive cruise control malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cruise control active Adaptive braking off | You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available | Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Repeatedly press the button on the instrument panel to scroll through the available drive modes. Release the button to confirm your selected drive mode.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***DRIVE MODES***.
3. Select a setting.

You can press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

## DRIVE MODES - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### ECO

Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

### MUD/RUTS

Vehicle settings suited for driving through mud and ruts.

**Note:** *Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.*

### NORMAL

Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

**Note:** *This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.*

### SLIPPERY

Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

### TOW/HAUL

Vehicle settings suited for towing or hauling.

## DRIVE MODES - ELECTRIC MOTOR

### ECO

Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

### NORMAL

Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### SLIPPERY

Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

**Note:** *If you switch off your vehicle in* ***Slippery*** *mode, the system prompts you to return to this mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system defaults to* ***Normal*** *mode.*

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description |
|---|---|
| Drive mode not available | The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

## HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

**Note:** *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

**Note:** *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

## HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

## VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Eco coach***.

## HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Eco coach***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Driver assist.***.
2. Select ***Eco coach***.
3. Switch ***Eco advice*** on or off.

## DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Driver assist.***.

## TRIP SUMMARY

### HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

**Note:** *The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.*

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

### VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Eco coach***.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the ***OK*** button.

## EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS

It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

**Note:** *Make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Enabling and Disabling the Modem*** *(page 478).*

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch ***Local hazard information*** on.

## CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Information***.
3. Select ***Local hazard information***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

## SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

## SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ SET- Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ SET- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

CAN Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the ***RES*** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

## SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

## SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

## HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to set the system in standby mode. The system prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to set the system to standby mode. The system prompts you to set a speed or shows the detected speed limit as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

**Note:** *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

## CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

## ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Speed limiter***.
4. Select ***Intelligent***.
5. Select ***Tolerance***.
6. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the ***RES*** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the instrument cluster display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Speed limiter***.
4. Switch ***Intelligent*** off.

**Note:** *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide termporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF

E270719

Press the button on the turn signal stalk.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Lane keeping system***.
4. Select ***Mode***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the three modes in the instrument cluster display:

- Alert mode.
- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

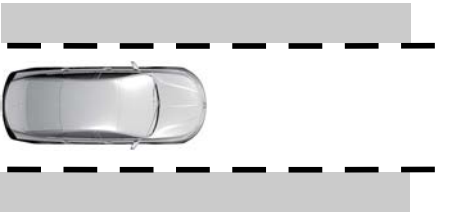
**Note:** *The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.*

## ALERT MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode provides steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

### HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel if it detects an unintended lane departure.

### ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Lane keeping system***.
4. Select ***Intensity***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

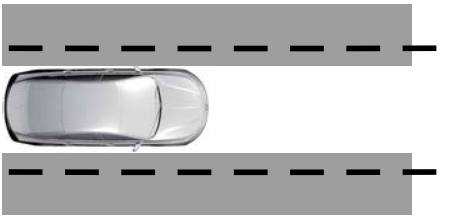
**Note:** *This setting does not affect the aid mode.*

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

### HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

**Note:** *When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.*

**Note:** *The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

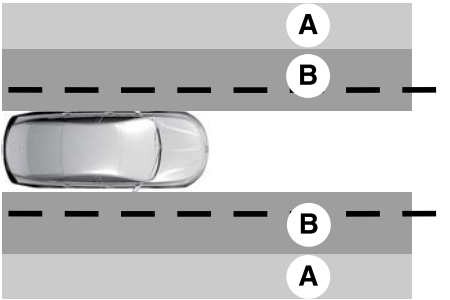
## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

### HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.




A Alert.

B Aid.

**Note:** *The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.*

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and aid mode or alert and aid mode are selected.

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and alert mode is selected.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK

E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

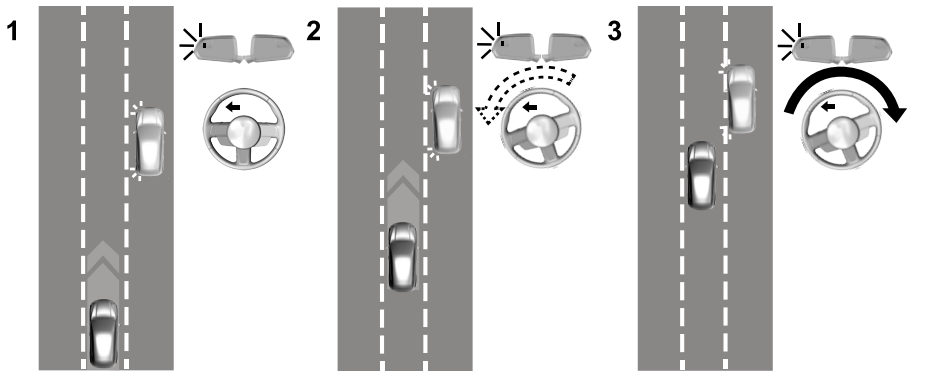
**Note:** *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

**Note:** *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS




The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 317).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 317).

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

**Note:** *When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 319).*

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist with trailer coverage detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of the trailer.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 319).

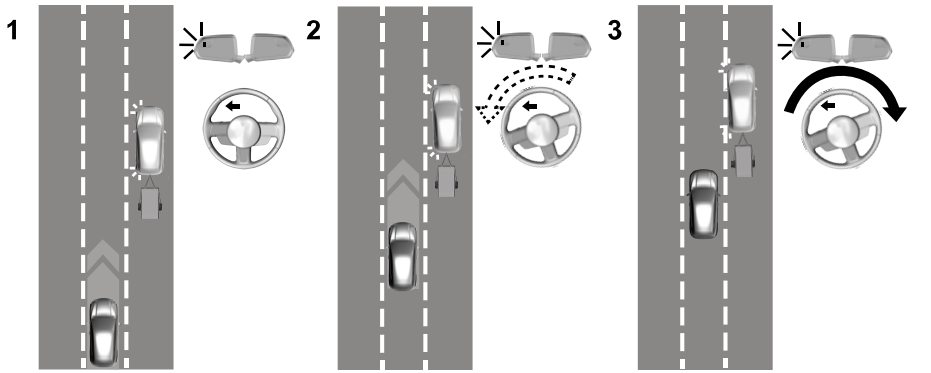
**Note:** *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

**Note:** *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS






Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 317).

### Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Information Messages

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 319). |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 317).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Lane keeping system malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Front camera temporarily not available | The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable. |
| Front camera Low visibility Clean screen | The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly. |
| Front camera malfunction Service required | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Keep hands on steering wheel | The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel. |



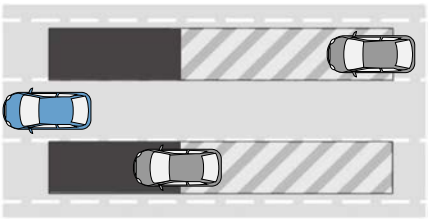
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

**Note:** *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

**Note:** *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

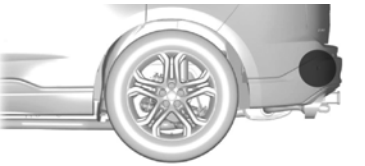
1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Switch ***BLIS*** on or off.

If you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

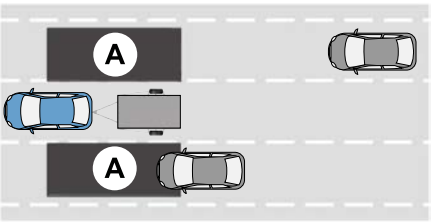
If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE




E293525

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***BLIS***.
4. Select ***Trailer***.
5. Select ***None***.
6. Press the ***OK*** button.

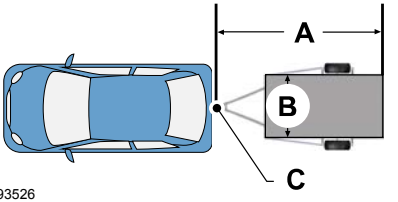
When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.*

## SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH




A Trailer length.
B Trailer width.
C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***BLIS***.
4. Select ***Trailer lengths***.
5. Select ***Trailer A***, ***Trailer B*** or ***Trailer C***.
6. Select the trailer length at the closest available value.

**Note:** *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

7. Press the ***OK*** button.

**Note:** *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

## SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the instrument cluster display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***BLIS***.
4. Select ***Trailer***.
5. Select ***Trailer A***, ***Trailer B*** or ***Trailer C***.
6. Press the ***OK*** button.

# BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

# BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| BLIS deactivated Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| BLIS malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

**Note:** *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |
| Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked | Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked. |
| Blind Spot Assist System malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

For more information about blind spot assist See **Lane Keeping System** (page 308).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

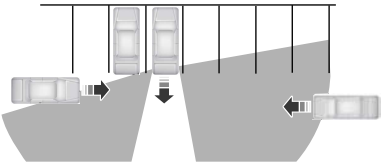
## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

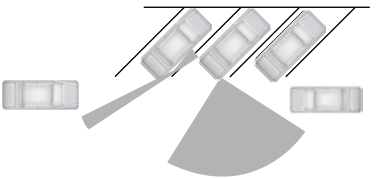
## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h (4 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Switch ***Cross Traffic Alert*** on or off.

**Note:** *If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS

When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and direction indicators appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

**Note:** *If the direction indicators do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS

If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Cross traffic alert | Displays instead of direction indicators when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic. |
| Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual | Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cross traffic malfunction | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached | Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle. |



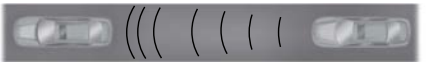
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in the road ahead of you, or who could cross the vehicle's path, and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

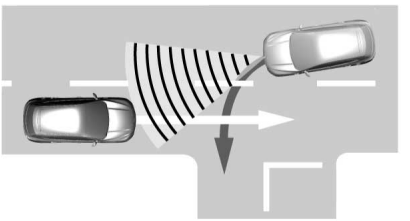
| Level of Functionality | Details |
|---|---|
| Alert | When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds. |
| Brake support | The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal. |
| Automatic emergency braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.<br>The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph). |
| Automatic emergency braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control | The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h (18.6 mph).



## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

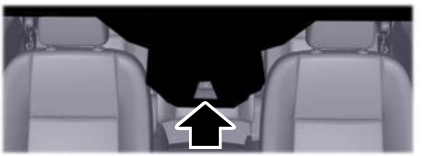
The system is not designed to detect animals.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The system is not designed to detect vehicles that are traveling in a different direction.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

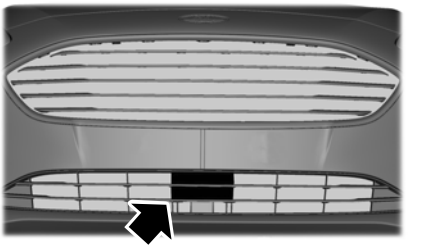
**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## DISTANCE INDICATION

### WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

### SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Pre-collision Assist***.
4. Switch ***Distance indication*** on or off.

### DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

| Vehicle Speed | System Sensitivity | Distance Indicator Color | Distance Gap | Time Gap |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 100 km/h (62 mph) | Normal. | Gray. | Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) . | Greater than 0.9 seconds. |
| | | Yellow. | 17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft). | 0.6-0.9 seconds. |
| | | Red. | Less than 17 m (55.8 ft). | Less than 0.6 seconds. |

## DISTANCE ALERT

### WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Pre-collision Assist***.
4. Select ***Alert sensitivity***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Pre-collision Assist***.
4. Switch ***Active braking*** on or off.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS

It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates amber when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Pre-collision assist not available | The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked | The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.**

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed. | Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction. |
| The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction. |
| Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals. | The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve. |
| The radar is misaligned. | Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed. | Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera. |
| The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display. | Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction. |
| Excessive heat around the camera. | Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Switch ***Driver Alert*** on or off.

**Note:** *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

## RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested | Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels. |
| Driver fatigue warning Rest now | Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** *Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Traffic sign recognition***.
4. Select ***Activate Traff. Sign Recog.***.
5. Select ***Activate speed warning***.
6. Select ***Speed warning***.
7. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

## HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

**Note:** *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are grayed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

## SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Traffic sign recognition***.
4. Select ***Activate Traff. Sign Recog.***.
5. Select ***Activate speed warning***.
6. Switch ***Overspeed chime*** on or off.

## SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Select ***Traffic sign recognition***.
4. Select ***Activate Traff. Sign Recog.***.
5. Select ***Activate speed warning***.
6. Select ***Speed warning***.
7. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual | The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

## HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

**Note:** *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

**Note:** *The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.*

## WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

## WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

## SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver assistance***.
3. Switch ***Wrong Way Alert*** on or off.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Check driving direction | The system has detected that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Press the ***OK*** button. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

## ROOF RACK

### ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

**Note:** *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

## ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - BUS

### Maximum Roof Load

| Variant | kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| Medium-Roof. | 150 (331) |
| High-Roof. | 100 (220) |

## ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - VAN

### All Except 310M M1 Kombi With Passenger Double Seat, Second Row Seats & Third Row Seats.

| Variant | Maximum Roof Load kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| Medium-Roof. | 150 (331) |
| High-Roof. | 100 (220) |

### 310M M1 Kombi With Passenger Double Seat, Second Row Seats & Third Row Seats.

| Variant | Maximum Roof Load kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| Medium-Roof. | 100 (220) |
| High-Roof. | 50 (110) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

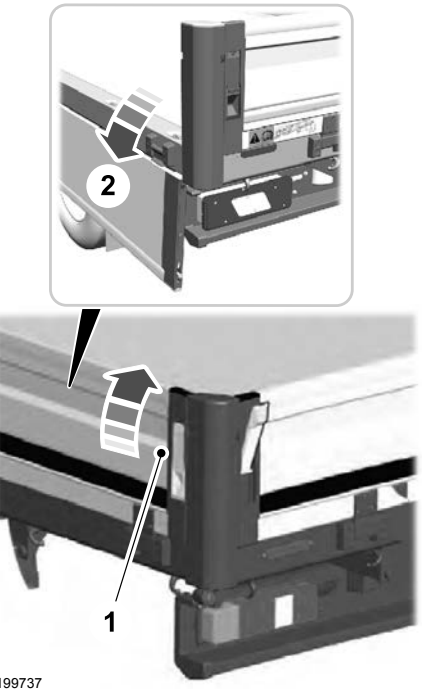
## LOAD BED PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the tailgate to prevent cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## ACCESSING THE LOAD BED

### OPENING THE SIDE PANEL



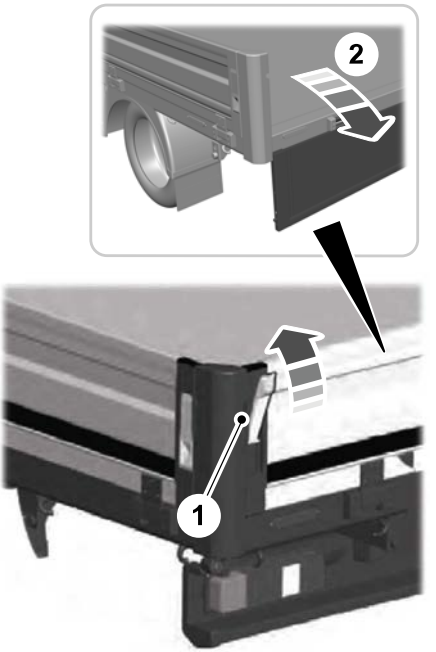

E199737

1. Push the top of the side panel and pull the latch up.
2. Pull to open the side panel.

**Note:** *Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the side panel to prevent it from dropping down.*

**Note:** *When closing the side panel remove all debris between the side panel and loadspace.*

## OPENING THE TAILGATE

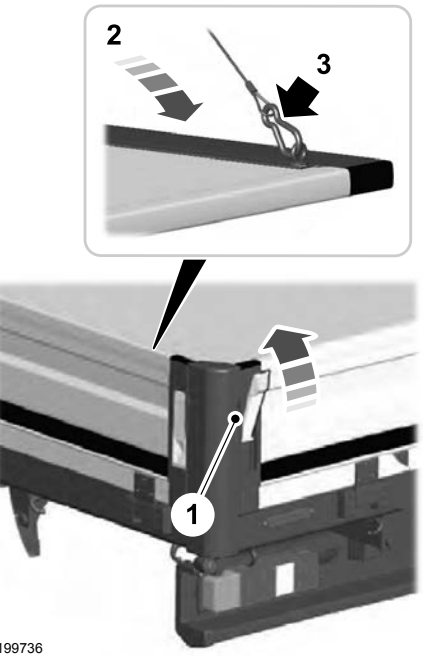



1. Push the top of the tailgate and pull the latch up.
2. Pull to open the tailgate.

**Note:** *Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the tailgate to prevent it from dropping down.*

**Note:** *When closing the tailgate remove all debris between the tailgate and loadspace.*

## OPENING THE TAILGATE TO THE MIDDLE POSITION




E199736

1. Push the top of the tailgate and pull the latch up.
2. Slightly lower the tailgate.

**Note:** *Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the tailgate to prevent it from dropping down.*

3. Release both support cables from the tailgate.
4. Lower the tailgate.

**Note:** *Do not exceed the maximum permissible tailgate load of 150 kg (330 lb).*

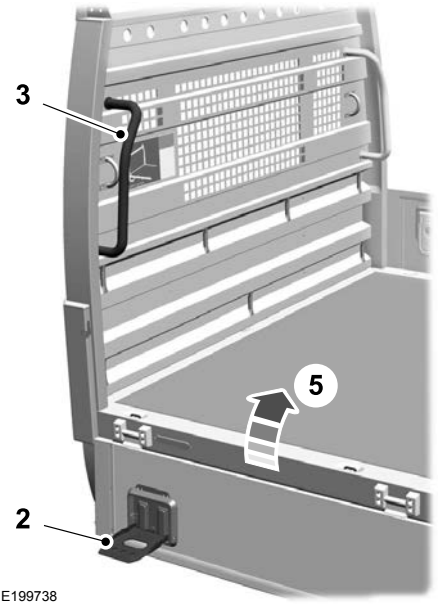
**Note:** *When closing the tailgate remove all debris between the tailgate and loadspace.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOAD BED STEP

### ACCESSING THE SIDE PANEL STEP




E199738

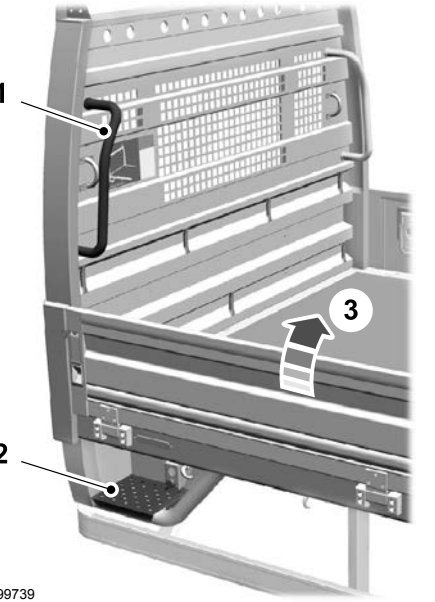
1. Lower the side panel.

**Note:** *Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the side panel to prevent it from dropping down.*

2. Lower the side panel step.
3. Hold the grab handle.
4. Place foot onto the side panel step.
5. Climb onto the load bed.

**Note:** *When closing the side panel remove all debris between the side panel and loadspace.*

### ACCESSING THE FOOT TREADPLATE




E199739

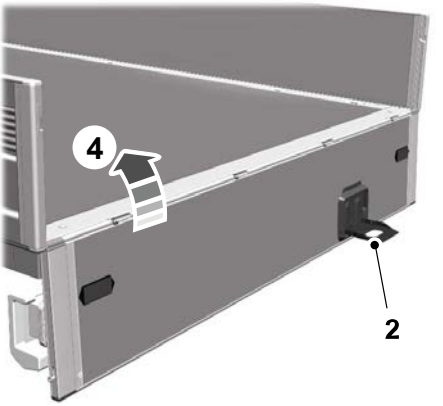
1. Hold the grab handle.
2. Place foot onto the tread plate.
3. Climb onto the load bed.

**Note:** *We recommend using the foot tread plate, when there is a possibility of load spillage.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ACCESSING THE TAILGATE STEP




1. Lower the tailgate.

**Note:** *Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the tailgate to prevent it from dropping down.*

2. Lower the tailgate step.
3. Place foot onto the tailgate step.
4. Climb onto the load bed.

**Note:** *When closing the tailgate remove all debris between the tailgate and loadspace.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

## REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

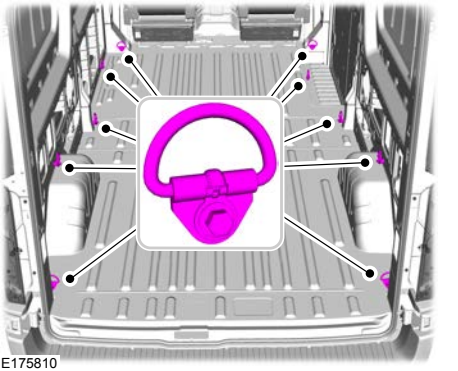
**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS


E175810

**Note:** *The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.*

## REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

| Variant | Maximum Load Value |
|---|---|
| All Van | 5,000 N (1,125 lb) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 353).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 476).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 348).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

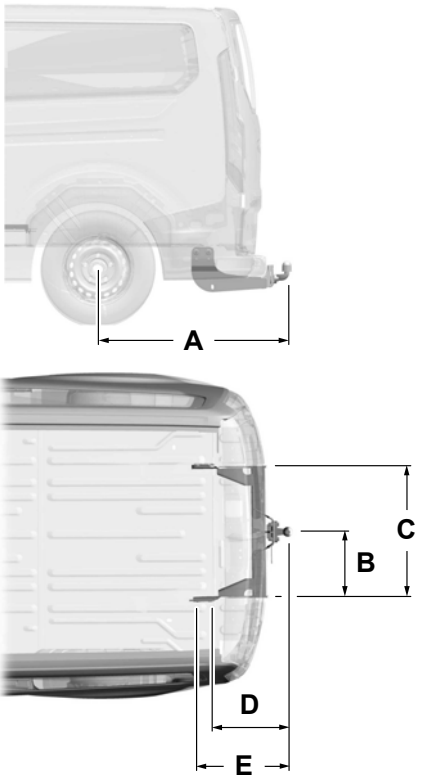
#### Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

| Powertrain | kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| 2.0L EcoBlue. | 112–140 (247–309) |
| BEV. | 60 (132) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - BUS/KOMBI/VAN




E148831

**Medium or Long Wheelbase**

| Measurement | Dimension Description | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 1,344–1,381 (52.9–54.4) |
| B | Center of tow ball to side member. | 417 (16.4) |
| C | Distance between side members. | 839 (33.0) |
| D | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 619–666 (24.4–26.2) |
| E | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 704–741 (27.7–29.2) |

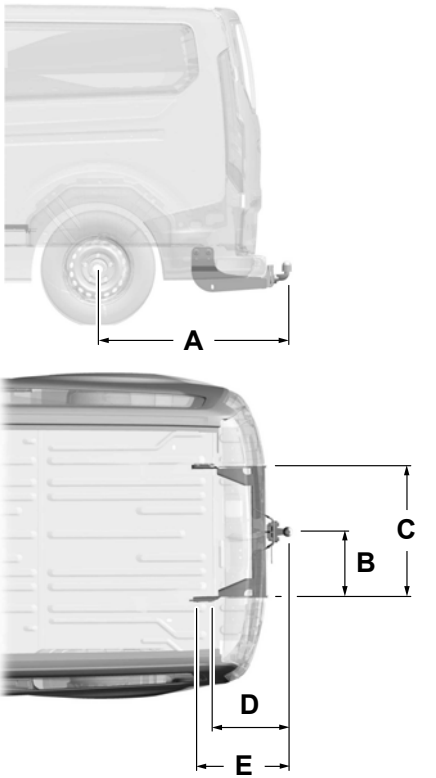
**Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame**

| Measurement | Dimension Description | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 2,105 (82.9) |
| B | Center of tow ball to side member. | 417 (16.4) |
| C | Distance between side members. | 839 (33.0) |
| D | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 629–666 (24.8–26.2) |
| E | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 704–741 (27.7–29.2) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB/CHASSIS DOUBLE CAB




E148831

**Short, Medium or Long Wheelbase**

| Measurement | Dimension Description | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 1,178 (46.4) |
| B | Center of tow ball to side member. | 416 (16.4) |
| C | Distance between side members. | 832 (32.8) |
| D | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 237 (9.3) |
| E | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 343.5 (13.5) |

**Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame**

| Measurement | Dimension Description | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 1,735 (68.3) |
| B | Center of tow ball to side member. | 416 (16.4) |
| C | Distance between side members. | 832 (32.8) |
| D | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 237 (9.3) |
| E | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 343.5 (13.5) |

**Extra Long Wheelbase - Extended Frame**

| Measurement | Dimension Description | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wheel center to center of tow ball. | 2,165 (85.2) |
| B | Center of tow ball to side member. | 416 (16.4) |
| C | Distance between side members. | 832 (32.8) |
| D | Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point. | 237 (9.3) |
| E | Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point. | 343.5 (13.5) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message ***Trailer sway Reduce speed*** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**Note:** *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25ºC (-13ºF).

## DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE

**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 249).

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

## EMERGENCY MANEUVERS

In an unavoidable emergency where you must make a sudden sharp maneuver, turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal as needed. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking changes. Abrupt changes could increase the risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If possible, use any available road surfaces to bring your vehicle under control.

## DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

### Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 356).

## DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 248).

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE

### MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

#### Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

#### Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences** (page 232).

**Note:** *You can also access departure and comfort settings using the FordPass App.*

**Note:** *Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.*

#### Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

#### Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores. See **Trip Data** (page 116).

### DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

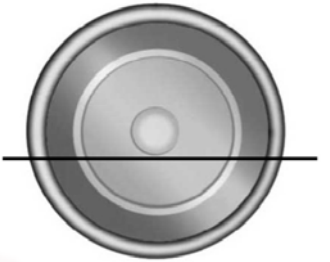


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

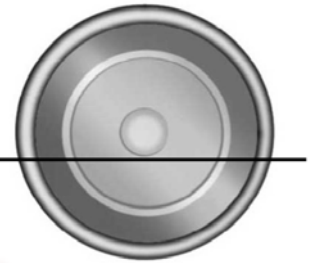
- Horn
- Exterior lights

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - ELECTRIC MOTOR

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

**WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - ELECTRIC MOTOR

**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** *This procedure is only for the 12 volt battery.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is under the driver seat. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.*

**Note:** *Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.*

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

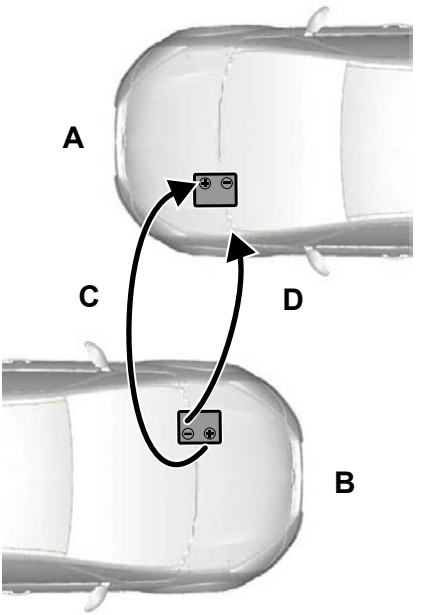
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



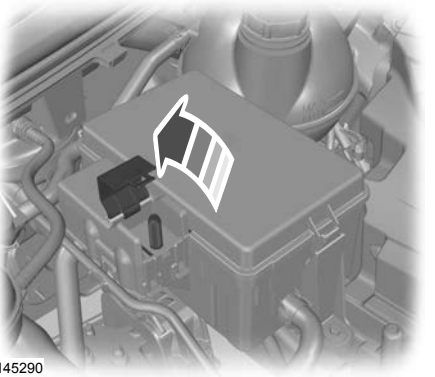

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Vehicle with the discharged battery. |
| B | Vehicle with the booster battery. |
| C | Positive jumper cable. |
| D | Negative jumper cable. |

**Front Wheel Drive**

1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



E145290

2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Maintenance** (page 388).

**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

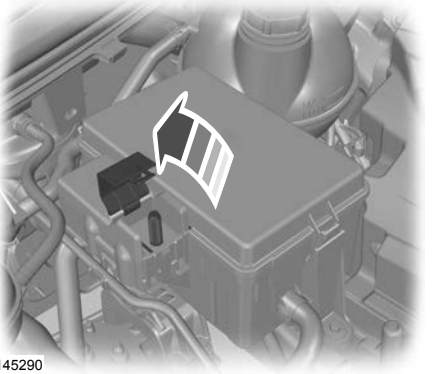
3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

**Rear Wheel Drive**

1. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.



E145290

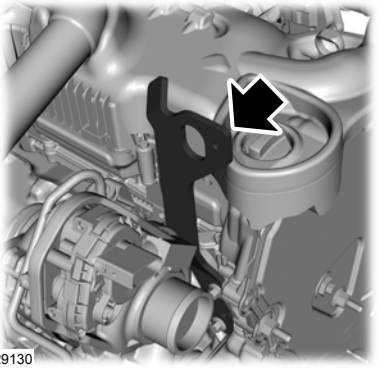
2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Maintenance** (page 388).

**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing


E229130

**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

### Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
3. When the engine starts, run the engines for three minutes before you disconnect the jumper cables.

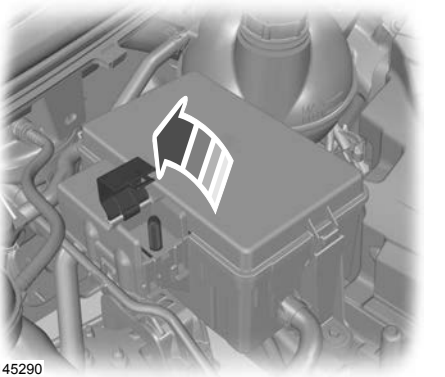
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** *Do not switch the headlamps on before you disconnect the jumper cables. The peak voltage could cause the bulbs to fail.*

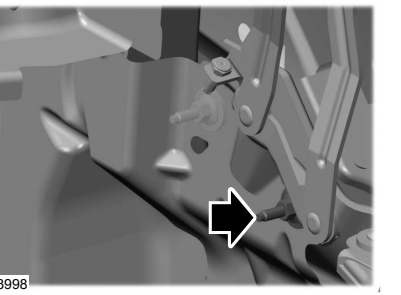
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Your vehicle has a positive (+) access terminal and a negative (-) ground connection point that you can access under the hood, even though the actual battery is under the driver seat. You can jump your vehicle using these points.

The positive (+) access terminal is next to the fuse box, under a red cap. To access the positive (+) terminal, lift the red cap up.


E145290

The negative (-) terminal is a post on the driver side, near the hood hinge. It is a ground connection point. You need to remove the rubber covering first.

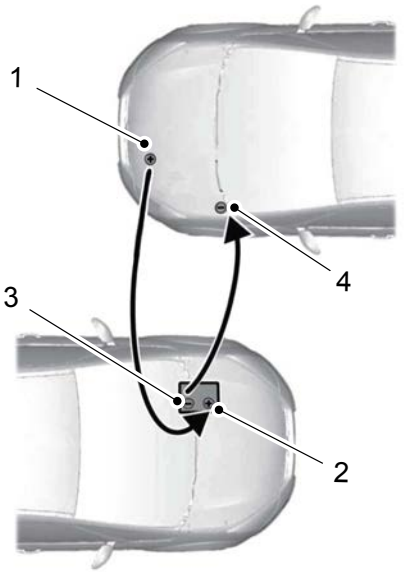

E183998



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**Note:** *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*




1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) access terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
6. Switch on the disabled vehicle.
7. Once power enters the 12 volt battery it starts the disabled vehicle. Run both vehicles at 2000-3000 rpms for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on and to intermittently sound the horn in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch or the unlock button on the remote control to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

## POST IMPACT BRAKING

### HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed in order to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (5 mph).

### OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

### POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS

It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - 2.0L ECOBLUE

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - ELECTRIC MOTOR

The system deactivates the high voltage system if it is a battery or hybrid-electric vehicle, in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

### AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

### RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## ACCESSING THE EMERGENCY EXIT - BUS

**WARNING:** Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

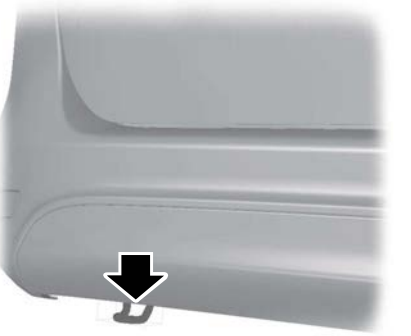
Break the glass with the hammer in an emergency.

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

E146426

### ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - BUS/VAN

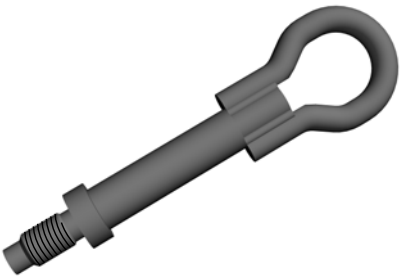


E142319

### ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - CHASSIS CAB

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye could be found:

- Secured to the floor under the passenger seat.
- Secured under the second row passenger seat.
- Inside the driver door storage compartment.
- Inside the toolkit within the front step storage compartment.

**Note:** *You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.*

## INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

E146426

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

**Note:** *It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.*

# FAIL-SAFE COOLING - 2.0L ECOBLUE

## WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

## HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

**Note:** *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

## DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED

**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

**WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

**WARNING:** Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

**Note:** *Make sure the transmission is in neutral (N) when towing your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle backward.*

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0ºC (32ºF).*

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral (N). If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to neutral (N), it may need to be overridden.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

**Note:** *If you need to exceed a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) and a distance of 80 km (50 mi) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

**Note:** *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or farther than 80 km (50 mi).*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

**WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

**WARNING:** Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

**Note:** *Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle backward.*

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0ºC (32ºF).*

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage.

## STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

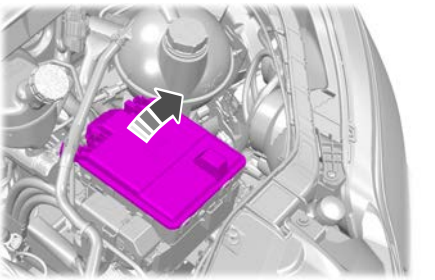
## FUSE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

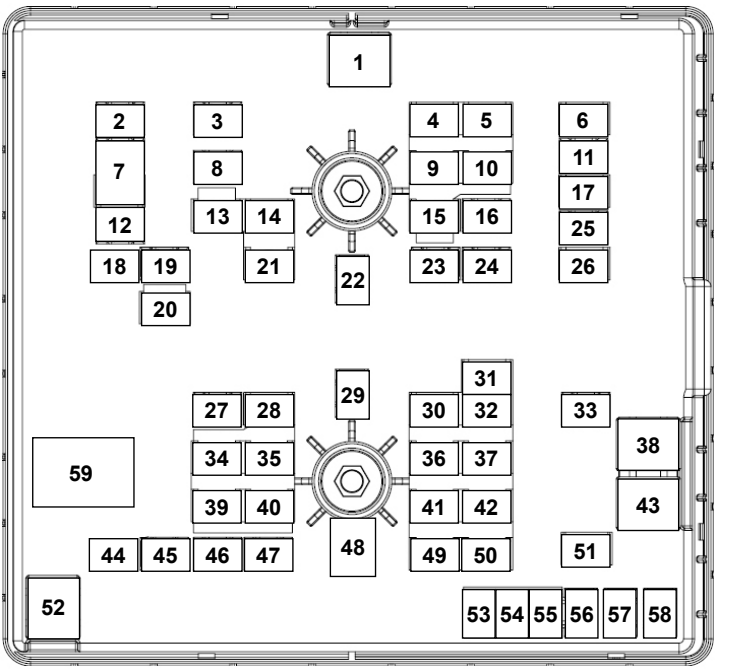
### ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX





Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX




| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 50 A | Wipers. |
| 2 | 20 A | All-wheel drive. |
| 3 | 40 A | Right-hand heated windshield element. |
| 4 | 15 A | Rear window washer pump. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | 40 A | Front blower motor. |
| 8 | 40 A | Left-hand heated windshield element. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | 15 A | Not used (spare). |
| 10 | 5 A | Battery energy control module - MHEV. |
| 11 | 40 A | Auxiliary power point.<br>USB port. |
| 12 | 20 A | Horn. |
| 13 | 10 A | Selective catalytic reduction system. |
| 14 | 10 A | Battery energy control module - Powertrain control module. |
| 15 | - | Not used. |
| 16 | - | Not used. |
| 17 | 10 A | Right-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps. |
| 18 | 40 A | Rear window defroster. |
| 19 | 20 A | Not used (spare). |
| 20 | 10 A | Power folding mirrors. |
| 21 | 15 A | Vehicle power 4. |
| 22 | 40 A | Rear blower motor. |
| 23 | 20 A | Fuel pump. |
| 24 | 40 A | Not used (spare). |
| 25 | 40 A | Auxiliary power points. |
| 26 | 10 A | Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps. |
| 27 | 40 A | Selective catalytic reduction system. |
| 28 | 20 A | Vehicle power 1. |
| 29 | 40 A | Fuel filter heater. |
| 30 | 7.5 A | Coolant pump. |
| 31 | 5 A | Anti-lock brake system. |
| 32 | 15 A | Transmission control module. |
| 33 | 30 A | Starter motor. |
| 34 | 15 A | Selective catalytic reduction system. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 35 | 15 A | Vehicle power 2. |
| 36 | 5 A | Belt integrated starter generator - MHEV. |
| 37 | 5 A | Glow plugs.<br>Powertrain control module. |
| 38 | 60 A | Glow plug control module. |
| 39 | 15 A | Selective catalytic reduction system. |
| 40 | 10 A | Vehicle power 3. |
| 41 | 10 A | Controller glow plug. |
| 42 | 15 A | Transmission control unit. |
| 43 | 60 A | Anti-lock brake system pump. |
| 44 | 25 A | Cooling fan. |
| 45 | 30 A | Trailer socket. |
| 46 | - | Not used. |
| 47 | - | Not used. |
| 48 | 50 A | Cooling fan. |
| 49 | 15 A | Nitrogen oxides sensor. |
| 50 | 5 A | Closed crankcase ventilation heater. |
| 51 | 10 A | Air conditioning clutch. |
| 52 | 50 A | Cooling fan. |
| 53 | 5 A | Active tensioner - MHEV. |
| 54 | 20 A | Not used (spare). |
| 55 | 25 A | Transmission oil pump. |
| 56 | 25 A | Fuel fired booster heater. |
| 57 | 25 A | Anti-lock brake system with electronic stability control. |
| 58 | 30 A | Trailer socket. |
| 59 | - | Cooling fan relay. |

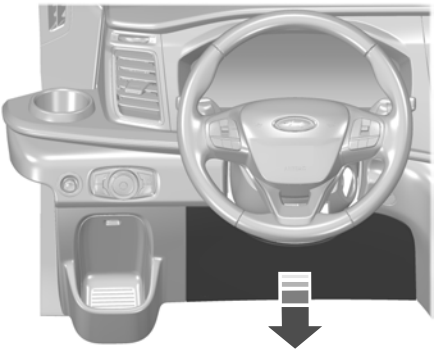


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# INTERIOR FUSE BOX

## ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

### Driver Compartment Fuse Box

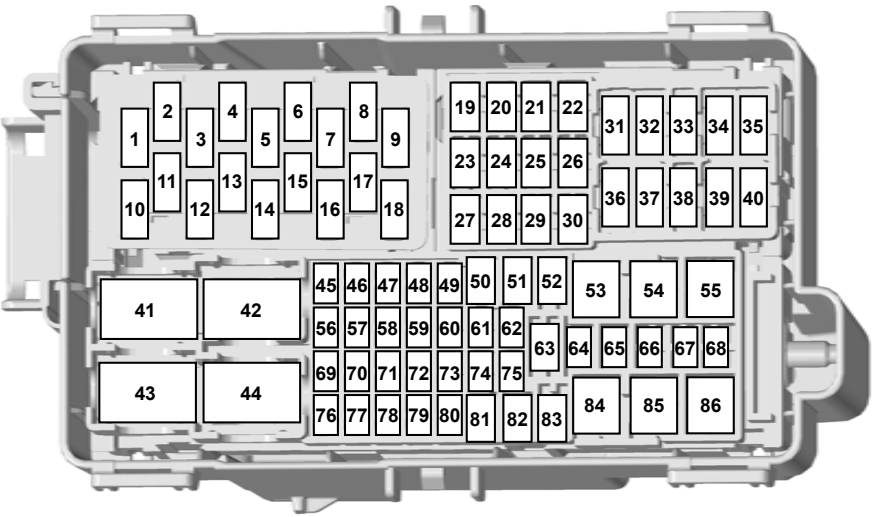


### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

### Driver Compartment Fuse Box




| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 5 A | USB port. |
| 2 | - | Not used. |
| 3 | 5 A | USB port. |
| 4 | - | Not used. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | - | Not used. |
| 8 | - | Not used. |
| 9 | 10 A | Heated exterior mirrors. |
| 10 | - | Not used. |
| 11 | - | Not used. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 12 | - | Not used. |
| 13 | - | Not used. |
| 14 | - | Not used. |
| 15 | - | Not used. |
| 16 | 5 A | Rain sensor. |
| 17 | - | Not used. |
| 18 | 20 A | Rear window wiper motor. |
| 19 | - | Not used. |
| 20 | - | Not used. |
| 21 | 20 A | Heated rear window. |
| 22 | 20 A | Heated rear window. |
| 23 | 20 A | Auxiliary power point. |
| 24 | 20 A | Auxiliary power point. |
| 25 | - | Not used. |
| 26 | 25 A | Windshield wiper motor. |
| 27 | - | Not used. |
| 28 | - | Not used. |
| 29 | - | Not used. |
| 30 | 30 A | Power running boards. |
| 31 | - | Not used. |
| 32 | - | Not used. |
| 33 | - | Not used. |
| 34 | - | Not used. |
| 35 | 5 A | Trailer tow module. |
| 36 | - | Not used. |
| 37 | - | Not used. |
| 38 | - | Not used. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

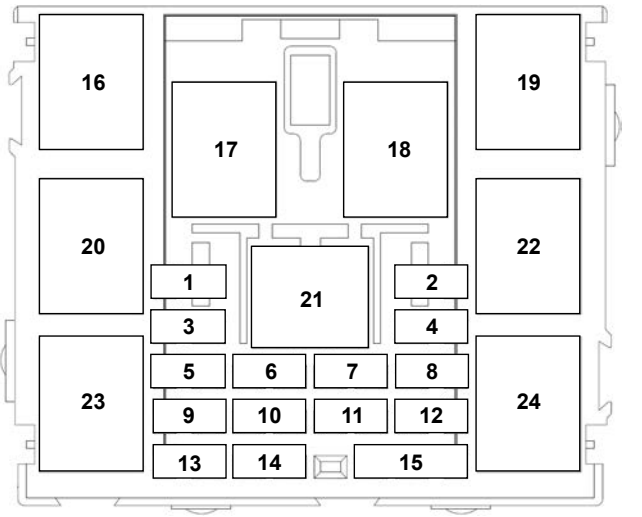
| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 39 | - | Not used. |
| 40 | - | Not used. |
| 41 | - | Not used. |
| 42 | 40 A | Starter relay. |
| 43 | - | Upfitter relay. |
| 44 | 40 A | Starter relay. |
| 45 | 10 A | Upfitter interface module. |
| 46 | 15 A | Trailer tow module. |
| 47 | 5 A | Fuel fired heater. |
| 48 | - | Not used. |
| 49 | 10 A | Brake pedal switch. |
| 50 | - | Not used. |
| 51 | - | Not used. |
| 52 | 30 A | Driver power seat. |
| 53 | 60 A | Battery. |
| 54 | 60 A | Power inverter. |
| 55 | 50 A | Body control module. |
| 56 | - | Not used. |
| 57 | - | Not used. |
| 58 | 10 A | Connector camper body interface.<br>Upfitter interface.<br>Secondary junction box. |
| 59 | 10 A | Rear climate control.<br>Front view camera.<br>Rear view camera.<br>Adaptive cruise control module.<br>Blind spot information system. |
| 60 | 10 A | Reductant dosage control module. |
| 61 | 7.5 A | Tachograph. |

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 62 | 15 A | Enhanced cut off relay system module. |
| 63 | 20 A | Auxiliary power point. |
| 64 | - | Not used. |
| 65 | - | Not used. |
| 66 | 10 A | Enhanced cut off relay system.<br>Camper.<br>Load shed relay. |
| 67 | - | Not used. |
| 68 | - | Not used. |
| 69 | 5 A | Steering wheel module. |
| 70 | - | Not used. |
| 71 | 10 A | Heated seats. |
| 72 | 10 A | Heated seats. |
| 73 | 20 A | Adaptive front lighting module.<br>Headlamp leveling. |
| 74 | - | Not used. |
| 75 | 20 A | Engine compartment fuse box. |
| 76 | 10 A | Power sliding door control switch. |
| 77 | 5 A | Headlamp switch. |
| 78 | 10 A | Power sliding door latch switch. |
| 79 | - | Not used. |
| 80 | 5 A | Starter relay. |
| 81 | 40 A | Trailer tow module. |
| 82 | 30 A | Power sliding door. |
| 83 | - | Not used. |
| 84 | 50 A | Body control module. |
| 85 | 30 A | Power sliding door. |
| 86 | 50 A | Body control module. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Box




| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 40 A | Auxiliary switch 1. |
| 2 | 40 A | Auxiliary switch 2. |
| 3 | 20 A | Beacon switch. |
| 4 | 20 A | Ignition. |
| 5 | 10 A | Direction indicators. |
| 6 | - | Not used. |
| 7 | - | Not used. |
| 8 | 10 A | Interior lighting. |
| 9 | 15 A | Two-way radio connector. |
| 10 | 5 A | Ignition. |
| 11 | 10 A | Ignition. |
| 12 | 20 A | Touchscreen. |

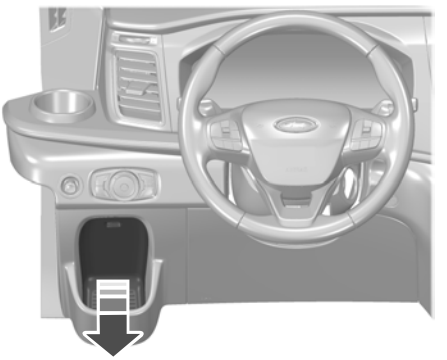


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 13 | 5 A | Power mode relay. |
| 14 | 5 A | Ignition. |
| 15 | 20 A | Power supply. |
| 16 | 20 A | Beacon relay. |
| 17 | 40 A | Auxiliary switch 1 relay. |
| 18 | 40 A | Auxiliary switch 2 relay. |
| 19 | 20 A | Ignition relay. |
| 20 | 20 A | Left direction indicator relay. |
| 21 | 20 A | Smart regenerative charge inhibit relay. |
| 22 | 20 A | Interior lamps relay. |
| 23 | 20 A | Right direction indicator relay. |
| 24 | 40 A | Auxilary power 4 relay. |

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

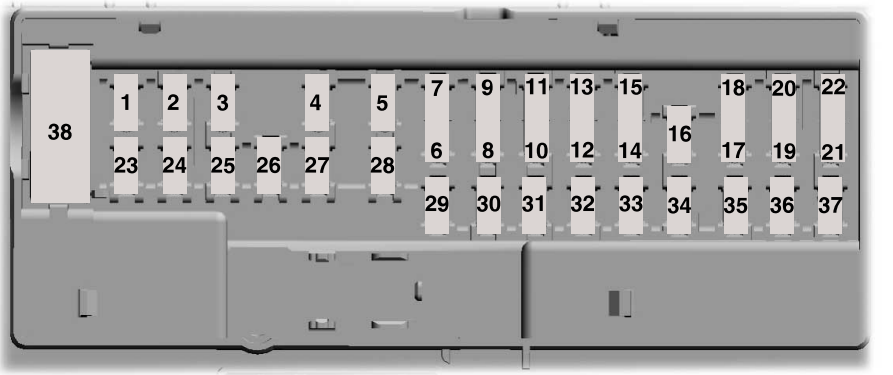
### ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX





Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX




| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | - | Not used. |
| 2 | 10 A | Power inverter. |
| 3 | 7.5 A | Power window switch.<br>Power exterior mirrors. |
| 4 | 20 A | Not used. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | 10 A | Anti-theft alarm horn. |
| 7 | 10 A | Not used. |
| 8 | 5 A | Telematics control unit module.<br>Embedded modem. |
| 9 | 5 A | Intrusion sensor.<br>Rear air conditioning. |
| 10 | - | Not used. |
| 11 | - | Not used. |
| 12 | 7.5 A | Climate control. |

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 13 | 7.5 A | Data link connector.<br>Steering column.<br>Instrument cluster. |
| 14 | 15 A | Battery energy control module - MHEV. |
| 15 | 15 A | SYNC 3 module. |
| 16 | - | Not used. |
| 17 | 7.5 A | Tachograph. |
| 18 | 7.5 A | Not used. |
| 19 | 5 A | Battery back-up sounder. |
| 20 | 5 A | Ignition switch. |
| 21 | 5 A | Positive temperature coefficient heater control. |
| 22 | 5 A | Pedestrian alert control module. |
| 23 | 30 A | Not used. |
| 24 | 30 A | Not used. |
| 25 | 20 A | Driver door module. |
| 26 | 30 A | Passenger door module. |
| 27 | 30 A | Not used. |
| 28 | 30 A | Gear shift module - battery electric vehicle.<br>Navigation display - diesel. |
| 29 | 15 A | Not used. |
| 30 | 5 A | Not used. |
| 31 | 10 A | Data link connector.<br>Remote key receiver. |
| 32 | 20 A | Radio.<br>Telematics module. |
| 33 | - | Not used. |
| 34 | 30 A | Tachograph.<br>Message center.<br>Positive temperature coefficient heater.<br>Lane keeping system camera.<br>Parking aid. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| | | Steering column. |
| 35 | 5 A | Not used. |
| 36 | 15 A | Parking aid.<br>Lane keeping system camera.<br>Steering column control module. |
| 37 | 20 A | Not used. |
| 38 | 30 A | Power windows. |

## HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

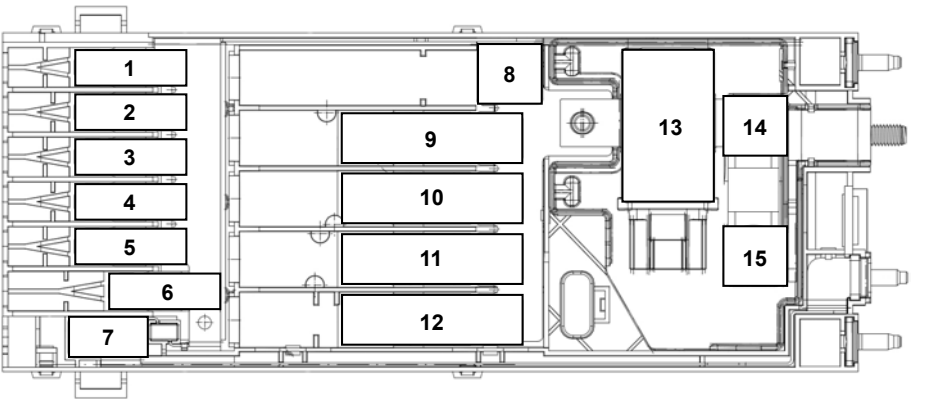
### LOCATING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

The high current fuse box is under the driver seat.

### ACCESSING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

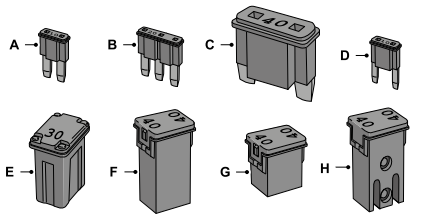
Remove the trim panel.

### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX



| Item | Fuse Rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 125 A | Body control module. |
| 2 | 80 A | Electronic power assist steering. |
| 3 | 150 A | Auxiliary heater. |
| 4 | - | Not used. |
| 5 | - | Not used. |
| 6 | 150 A | Passenger compartment fuse box. |
| 7 | 60 A | Camper. |
| 8 | - | Battery. |
| 9 | 470 A | Starter motor.<br>Alternator. |
| 10 | 300 A | Engine compartment fuse box. |
| 11 | 250 A | Direct current/Direct current converter - MHEV. |
| 12 | 150 A | Driver compartment fuse box. |
| 13 | - | Load shed relay. |
| 14 | 180 A | Auxiliary power point 1. |
| 15 | 60 A | Auxiliary power point 2. |

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES




| | |
|---|---|
| A | Micro 2. |
| B | Micro 3. |

| | |
|---|---|
| C | Maxi. |
| D | Mini. |
| E | M Case. |
| F | J Case. |
| G | J Case Low Profile. |
| H | Slotted M Case. |

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

## FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**When do I need to check a fuse?**

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

**When do I need to replace a fuse?**

If a fuse has blown.

**How do I identify a blown fuse?**

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

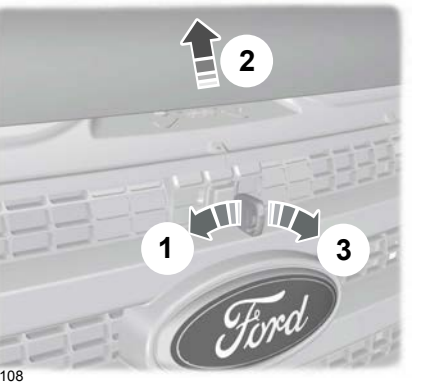
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood

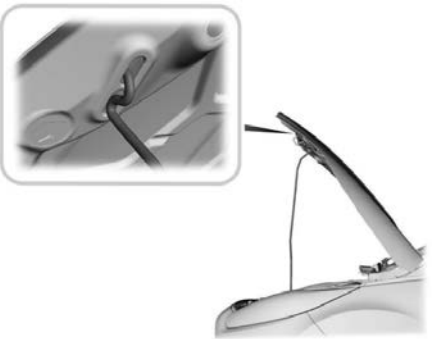



E72108

1. Insert the vehicle key into the hood lock and turn it counterclockwise.

**Note:** *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Turn the key clockwise to release the hood.



E87786

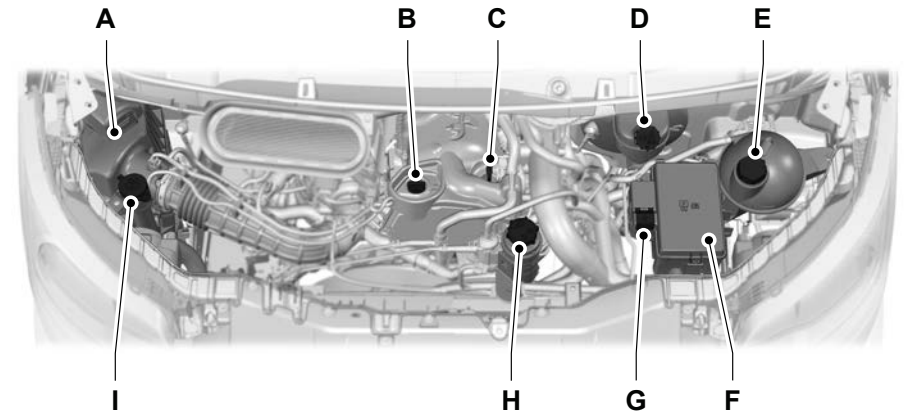
4. Support the hood with the strut.

### Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

**Note:** *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, AWD/RWD/LHD



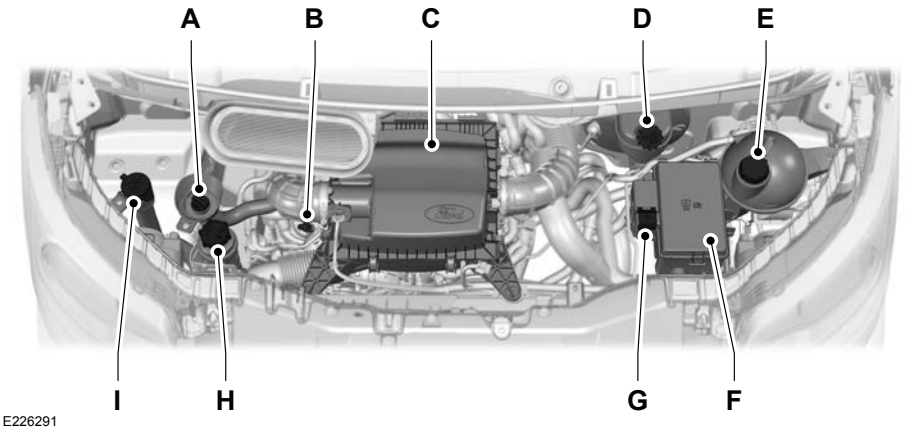

E226292

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Air filter. |
| B | Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 394). |
| C | Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 394). |
| D | Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249). |
| E | Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396). |
| F | Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 373). |
| G | Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360). |
| H | Power steering fluid reservoir. |
| I | Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89). |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, FWD/LHD



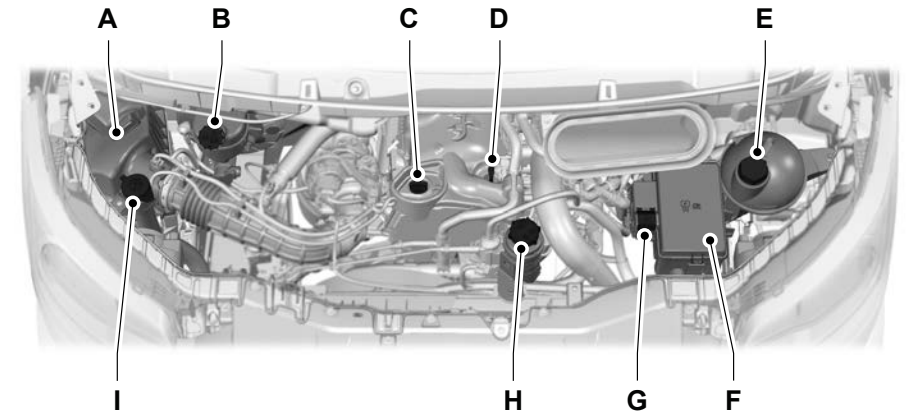

E226291

A Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 394).
B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 394).
C Air filter.
D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249).
E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396).
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 373).
G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360).
H Power steering fluid reservoir.
I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, AWD/RWD/RHD



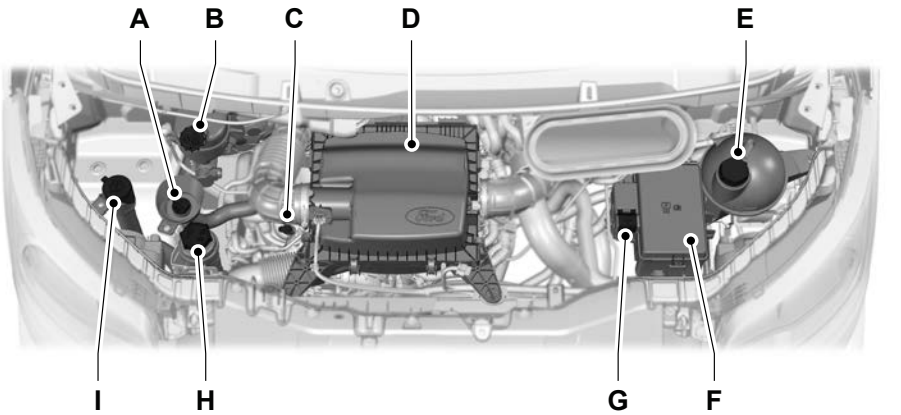

E226294

A Air filter.
B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249).
C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 394).
D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 394).
E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396).
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 373).
G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360).
H Power steering fluid reservoir.
I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE, FWD/RHD



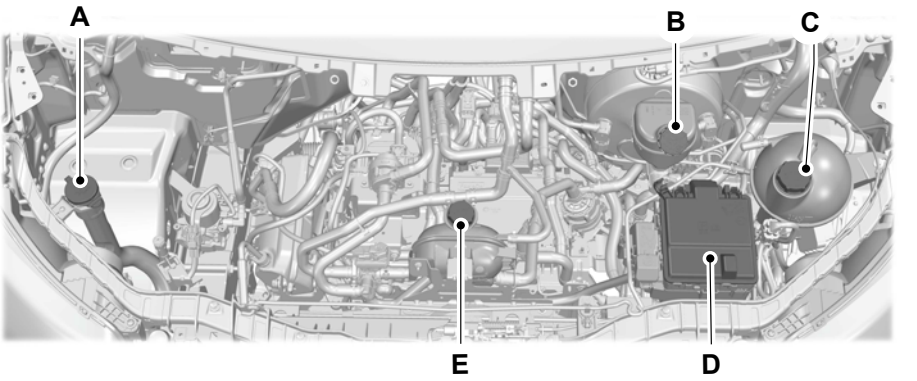

E226293

A Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 394).
B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249).
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 394).
D Air filter.
E Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396).
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 373).
G Battery connection. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360).
H Power steering fluid reservoir.
I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - ELECTRIC MOTOR




A Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 89).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 249).

C High temperature coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396).

D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 372).

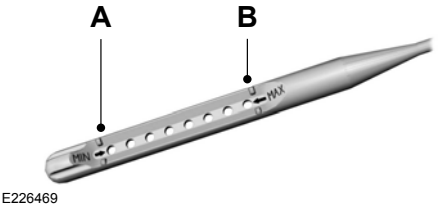
E Low temperature coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# ENGINE OIL - 2.0L ECOBLUE

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW




E226469

A Minimum.

B Maximum.

## CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warming up and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

## ADDING ENGINE OIL

**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 466).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

**Note:** *Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.*

## RESETTING THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Information***.
3. Select ***Oil life***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 469).

## ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Change engine oil soon | Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible. |
| Oil change required | Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible. |

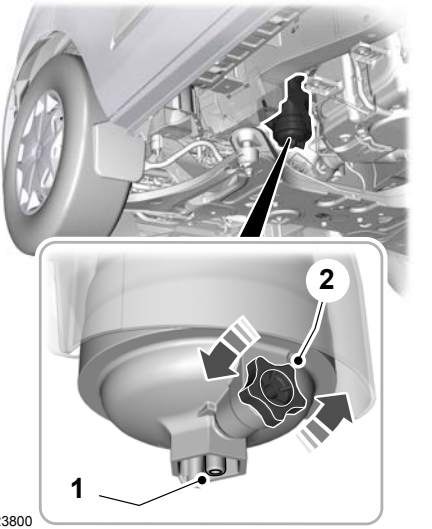
## DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

You should drain water from the fuel filter water trap whenever the warning light illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. If you ignore the warning lamp, water may pass through to the system and may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap**




1. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.

2. Turn the drain plug counterclockwise until it stops. Do not use any tools to loosen the drain plug. Drain the fuel filter water trap into an appropriate container. Do not re-use the fuel drained from the fuel filter water trap.
3. Tighten the drain plug, turn it clockwise until it stops and you feel a strong resistance. Do not use any tools to tighten the drain plug.
4. Switch the ignition of for 30 seconds and then switch the ignition off. Repeat this operation six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 196).

# COOLANT

## COOLANT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

## CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

**Note:** *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

**Note:** *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34ºC (-29ºF) and -37ºC (-35ºF). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## ADDING COOLANT

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

**Note:** *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 466). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 466). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

**Note:** *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 466).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 366).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Description and Action |
|---|---|
| High engine temperature Stop safely | Dipslays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 396). |

## 12V BATTERY

### 12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

## HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

## BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

### Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - 2.0L ECOBLUE

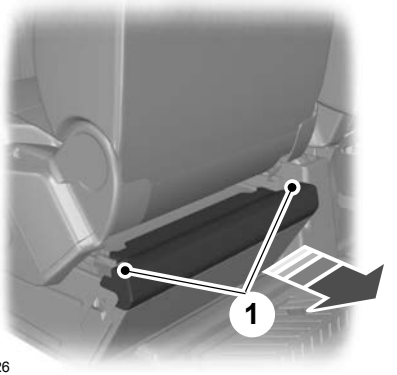
The battery is under the driver seat.

**Note:** *If you have power seats and the battery has no charge, jump-start your vehicle to move the seat. See* ***Jump Starting the Vehicle*** *(page 359).*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

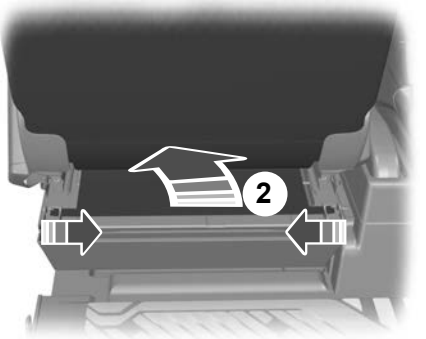
## Removing the Battery




E152526

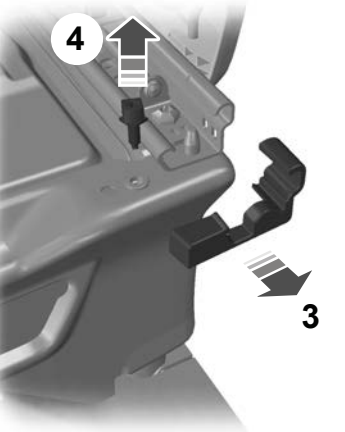
1. Fully raise the driver seat and move it fully forward. Pull the tabs upward and remove the cover.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have this cover.*




E152529

2. Unhook the cover and tuck it under the seat.

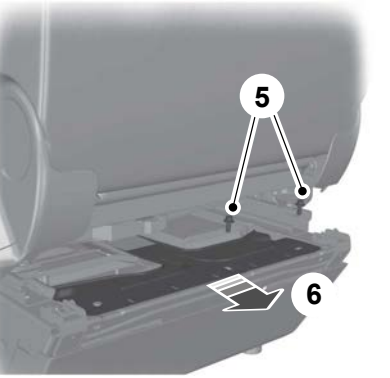



E146781

3. Remove both seat track end caps.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have these end caps.*

4. Remove both seat adjustment end stop bolts at the front of the seat.

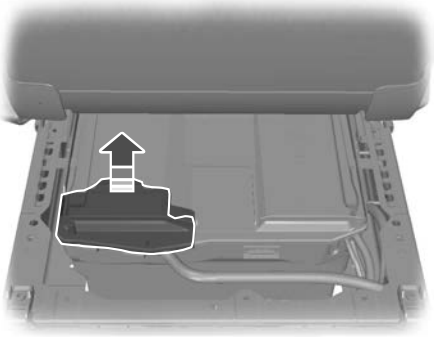



E146773

5. Remove the battery clamp and cover bolts.
6. Remove the battery clamp and cover.



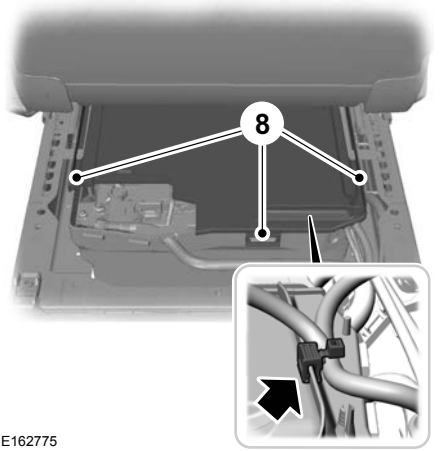
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



E162774

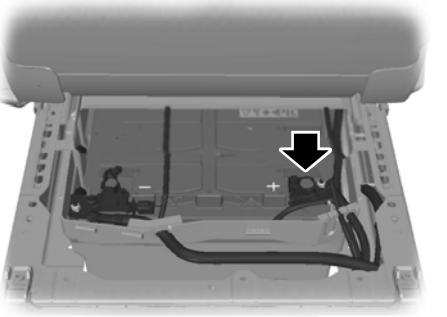
7. Remove the battery terminal cover and remove the negative (-) terminal.

**Note:** *Single batteries could be mounted the opposite way around in the battery tray. The negative terminal is toward the rear of your vehicle.*




E162775

8. Release the retaining clips and remove the cover.
9. Remove the cable securing clips from the cover.



E162776

10. Remove the positive (+) terminal and remove the battery.

**Note:** *Batteries are heavy.*

11. Move the second battery toward the rear of your vehicle and remove the negative (-) terminal.
12. Remove the positive (+) terminal and remove the battery.

### Replacing the Battery

**WARNING:** Make sure that you securely fasten the seat runner bolts before installing the covers.

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable clips.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - ELECTRIC MOTOR

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

### RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

### RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

### CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - ELECTRIC MOTOR

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12 volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12 volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12 volt battery when the vehicle is off.

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

### 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Check Charging system | The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Charging system Service soon | The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Charging system Service now | The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked. |

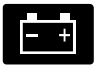


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Battery state of charge low | The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 360). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery. |
| Turn power off to save battery | The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery. |
| Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual | Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal. |

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING - ELECTRIC MOTOR

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

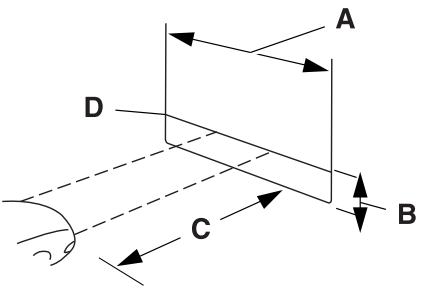
| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| 12V battery malfunction Service soon | Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer. |
| Electric range reduced due to park/hazard lamps on while vehicle off | The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off. |
| Electrical system drain Service required | Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer. |

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

**Headlamp Aiming Target**




A 8 ft (2.4 m)

B Ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb

C 25 ft (7.6 m)

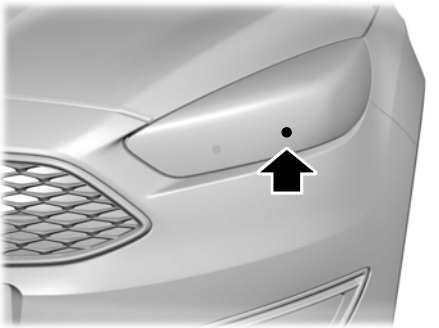
D Horizontal reference line

**Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure**

1. Park your vehicle on level ground approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) from a wall or screen.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb and mark an 2.4 m (8 ft) long horizontal reference line on the wall or screen at this height.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

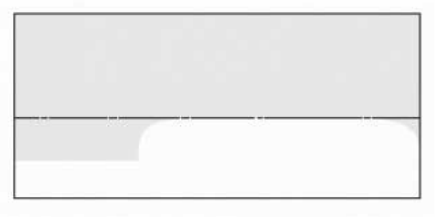


E199411

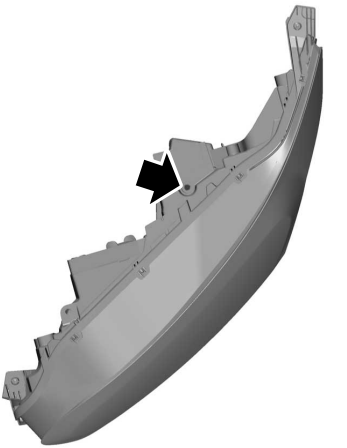
**Note:** *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the bulb.*

**Note:** *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, you may want to block the light from the other headlamp.*

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the flat zone of high intensity light is not on the horizontal reference line, adjust the aim of the headlamp beam.



E164485

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or hexagonal socket, to turn the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

The horizontal aim of the headlamp beam on your vehicle is not adjustable.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

| Lamp | Specification | Power (watt) |
|---|---|---|
| Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.[1] | H15 | 55/15 |
| Headlamp low beam.[1] | H7 | 55 |
| Headlamp low beam and headlamp high beam.[2] | D5S | 25 |
| Daytime running lamps.[2] | LED. | - |
| Front turn signal lamp.[1] | PY21W | 21 |
| Front turn signal lamp.[2] | PY24W | 24 |
| Cornering lamp.[1] | H1 | 55 |
| Cornering lamp.[2] | H11 | 55 |
| Front fog lamp.[1] | H11 | 55 |
| Front fog lamp.[2] | H8 | 35 |
| Front side marker lamp.[3] | W5W | 5 |
| Mirror turn signal lamp.[4] | W16W | 16 |
| Mirror turn signal lamp.[5] | WY5W | 5 |
| Body side marker lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Rear lamp and stoplamp. | P21/5W | 21/5 |
| Rear turn signal lamp. | PY21W | 21 |
| Reversing lamp. | P21W | 21 |
| Rear fog lamp. | P21W | 21 |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Lamp | Specification | Power (watt) |
|---|---|---|
| High mounted stoplamp. | LED. | - |
| Chassis cab rear marker lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Roof outline marker lamp. | W5W | 5 |
| Rear floodlamp. | LED. | - |
| License plate lamp. | W5W | 5 |

[1] Vehicles with Halogen Headlamps.
[2] Vehicles with High Intensity Discharge Headlamps.
[3] Front side marker lamps are also available as LED lamps.
[4] High Watt.
[5] Low Watt.
**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

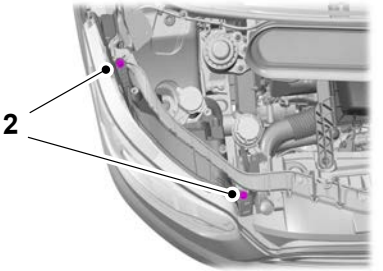


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP ASSEMBLY

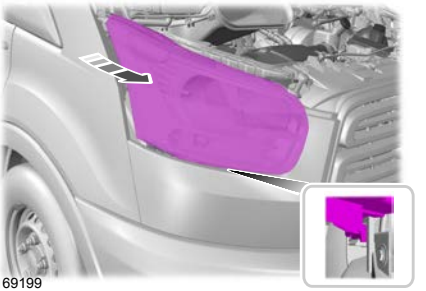
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 388).



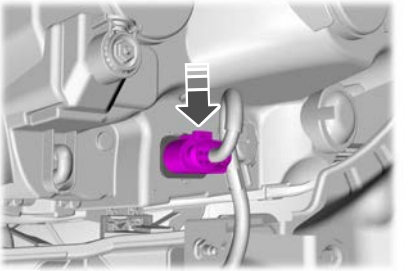

E169198

2. Remove the screws.



E169199

3. Pull the headlamp toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from its locking points and then lift the headlamp up.



E169200

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly attach the electrical connector.*

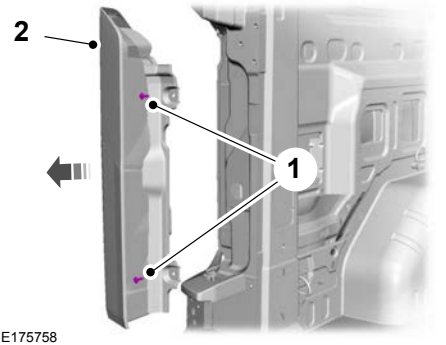
**Note:** *When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly engage its locking points.*

## REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A HEADLAMP BULB

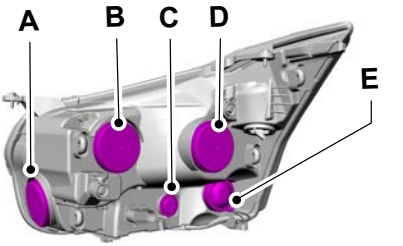
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 410).

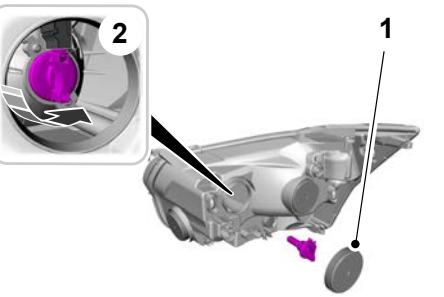
**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




E169204

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Cornering lamp. |
| B | Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. |
| C | Front turn signal lamp. |
| D | Headlamp low beam. |
| E | Front side marker lamp. |

### Replacing the Headlamp High Beam and Daytime Running Lamp Bulbs

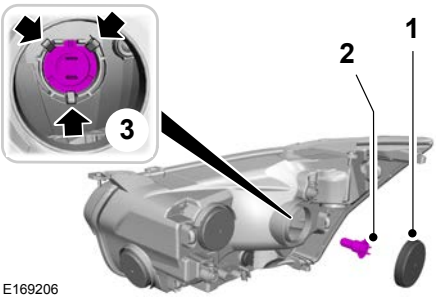



1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

**Note:** *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

### Replacing the Headlamp Low Beam Bulbs

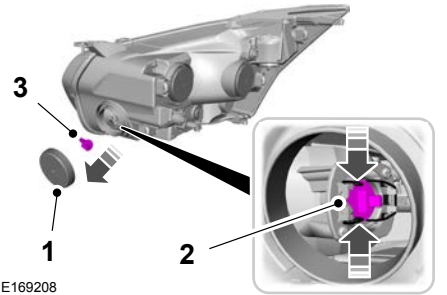


E169206

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Pull the bulb straight out past the retaining clips.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

### Replacing the Cornering Lamp Bulbs



E169208

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector and release the clip.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

### Replacing the High Intensity Discharge Headlamp Bulbs

These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

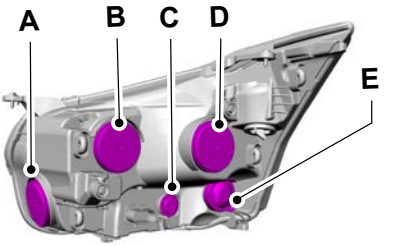
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 410).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



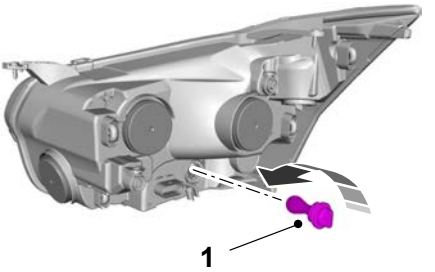
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




E169204

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Cornering lamp. |
| B | Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. |
| C | Front turn signal lamp. |
| D | Headlamp low beam. |
| E | Front side marker lamp. |

## Replacing the Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulbs




E169205

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP BULB

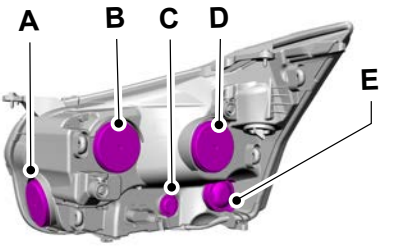
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp Assembly** (page 410).

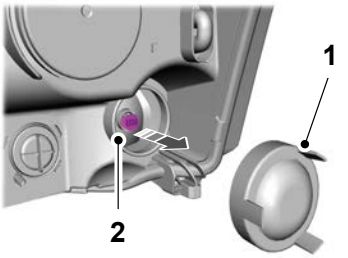
**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




E169204

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Cornering lamp. |
| B | Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. |
| C | Front turn signal lamp. |
| D | Headlamp low beam. |
| E | Front side marker lamp. |

### Replacing the Front Side Marker Lamp Bulbs




1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

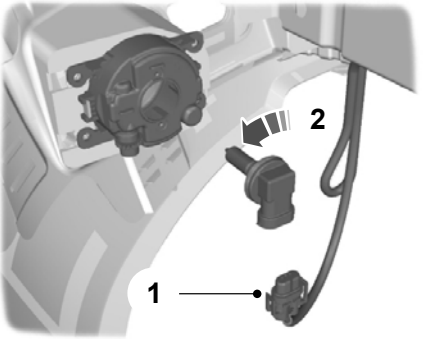
### CHANGING A FRONT FOG LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




E71062

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

### CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

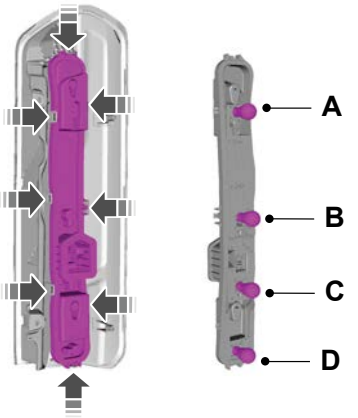
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 410).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
B Rear turn signal lamp.
C Reversing lamp.
D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

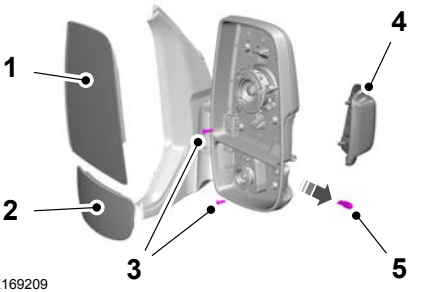
## CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



E169209

1. Remove the large mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully up and pull the mirror glass toward you from the bottom.
2. Remove the small mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully down and pull the mirror glass toward you from the top.
3. Remove the screws.
4. Remove the lamp lens.
5. Remove the bulb.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING AN ENTRY LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

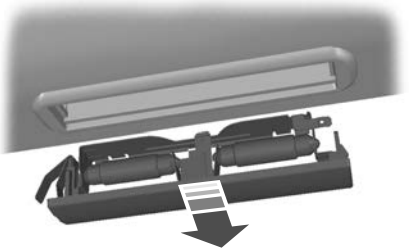


Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

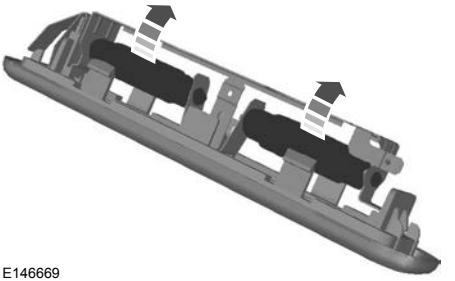
**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



E154369



E146669

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB

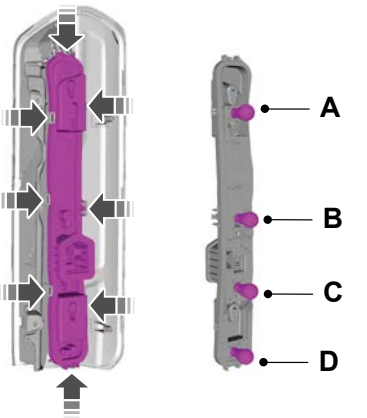
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 410).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




A Tail lamp and stoplamp.

B Rear turn signal lamp.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

C Reversing lamp.
D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB

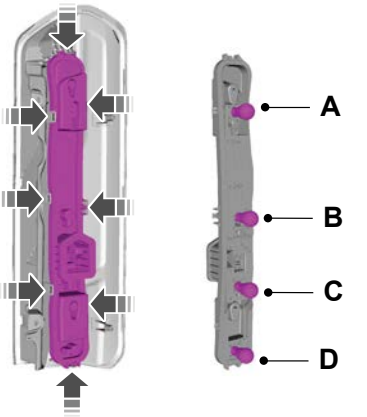
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 410).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
B Rear turn signal lamp.
C Reversing lamp.
D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

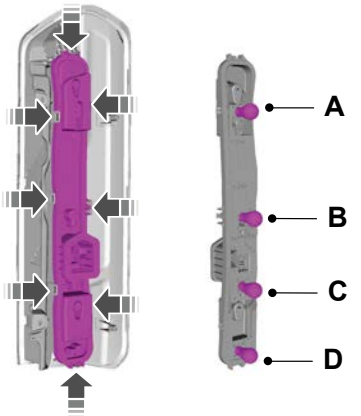
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 410).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
B Rear turn signal lamp.
C Reversing lamp.
D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB

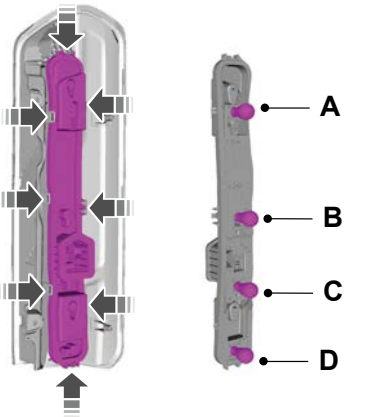
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 410).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*




A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
B Rear turn signal lamp.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

C Reversing lamp.

D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

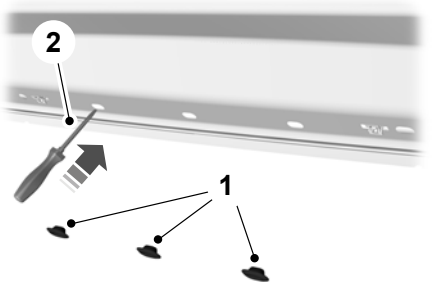
## CHANGING A HIGH MOUNTED STOPLAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

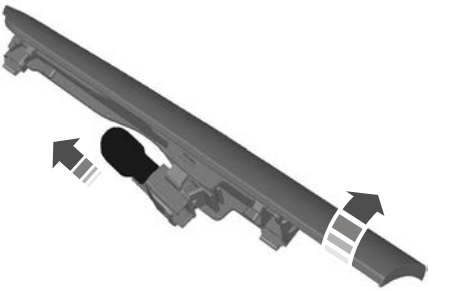



E162641

1. Remove the rubber grommets.

**Note:** *If fitted, remove the trim panel first.*

2. Using a screwdriver, gently prise the clips to release the lamp.



E146638

3. Remove the lamp.
4. Remove the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

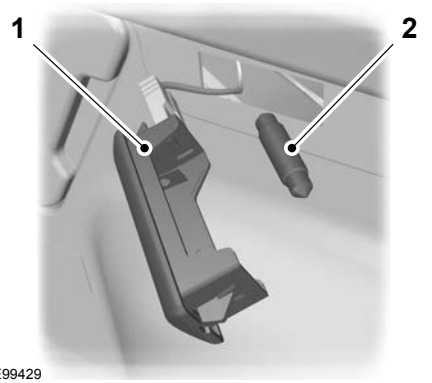
## CHANGING A LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



E99429

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

| Lamp | Specification | Power (Watt) |
|---|---|---|
| Front interior lamp. | W6W | 6 |
| Front interior lamp.[1] | Festoon | 6 |
| Luggage compartment lamp. | 211 Festoon | 10 |
| Map reading lamp. | W6W | 6 |
| Side door entrance lamp. | 211 Festoon | 10 |

[1] Vehicles with anti-theft alarm.
**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHANGING A FRONT INTERIOR LAMP BULB

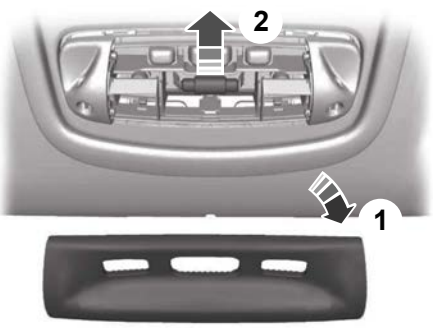
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

### Vehicles With Interior Sensors




E154370

1. Carefully remove the lens.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A MAP READING LAMP BULB

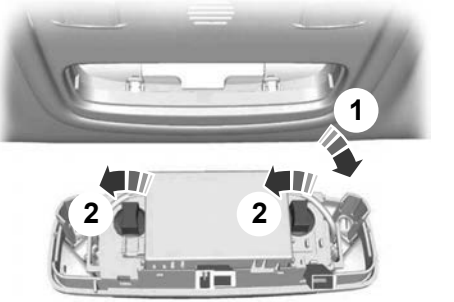
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

### Vehicles With Interior Sensors

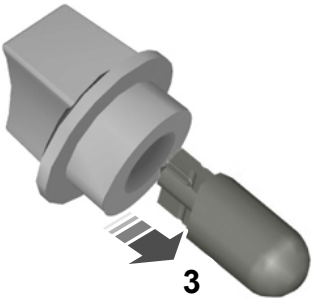



E72786

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



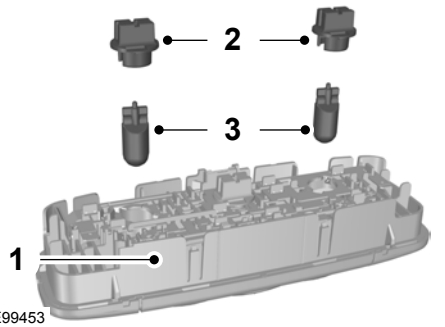
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




E73939

3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

### Vehicles Without Interior Sensors




E99453

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

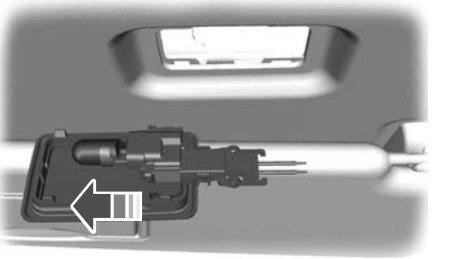
## CHANGING A VANITY MIRROR LAMP BULB

**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 408).

**Note:** *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



E72785

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## FUEL FILTER SERVICE INDICATOR CHECK - 2.0L ECOBLUE

If the warning lamp illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alternatively you can drain the fuel filter water trap. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 395).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

## CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

## CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

## CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

## CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

### CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90º angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82ºC (179ºF).

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

### CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

### CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

**Note:** *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

## CLEANING FABRIC

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING LEATHER

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CLEANING VINYL

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS

**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

## USING WINTER TIRES

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7ºC (45ºF) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 431).

## USING SNOW CHAINS

**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

If you use snow chains or cables, do the following:

- Only use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 10 mm (0.4 in) or smaller in diameter.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Snow Chain Use by Tire Size**

| Tire Size | Variant[3] | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Front Wheel Drive | Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Single Rear Wheels | Rear Wheel Drive - Vehicles With Dual Rear Wheels | All-Wheel Drive |
| 195/75R16C. | X | X | Yes.[1] | X |
| 215/65R15C. | Yes. | X | X | X |
| 215/65R16C. | Use special snow chain use wheel kit 16x5.5J with 185/75R16C 104/102 tires.[4] | X | X | X |
| 205/75R16C. | X | X | Yes.[1] | X |
| 235/65R16C 115/113. | Use special snow chain use wheel kit 16x5.5J with 185/75R16C 104/102 tires.[4] | Yes. | X | Yes.[2] |
| 235/65R16C 121/119. | Use special snow chain use wheel kit 16x5.5J with 195/75R16C 107/105.[4] | Yes. | X | Yes.[2] |

[1] Only fit snow chains to the outer tires.

[2] Only fit snow chains to the rear tires.

[3] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).

[4] Alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables are available to purchase from an authorized dealer as part of a special snow chain use wheel kit.

**X** Not suitable for use with snow chains.

**Note:** *Maintain correct tire pressures.*

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

**Note:** *We recommend that you switch the traction control system off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 266).*

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 431).

## INFLATING THE TIRES

**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - VAN

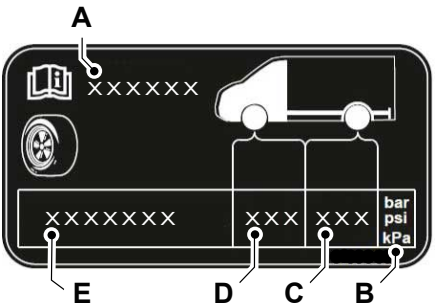
**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** *If necessary, remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing




E254055

A Vehicle model.
B Measure unit.
C Rear tire pressure.
D Front tire pressure.
E Tire size.

**Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi (front wheel drive)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 280 M | 215/65R15C 104/102 | 3.5 (51) | 3.3 (48) |
| 280 M | 215/65R16C 109/107 | 3.7 (54) | 3.6 (52) |
| 290 M | 215/65R15C 104/102 | 3.5 (51) | 3.3 (48) |
| 290 M | 215/65R16C 109/107 | 3.7 (54) | 3.6 (52) |
| 310 M | 215/65R15C 104/102 | 3.5 (51) | 3.7 (54) |
| 310 M | 215/65R16C 109/107 | 3.8 (55) | 4 (58) |
| 310 L | 215/65R15C 104/102 | 3.75 (54) | 3.7 (54) |
| 310 L | 215/65R16C 109/107 | 4 (58) | 4 (58) |
| 330 M<br>330 L | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4 (58) |
| 350 M | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.2 (61) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | | | |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.2 (61) |
| 350 L<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 L<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.5 (65) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).

**Van, Kombi-Van and Kombi (rear wheel drive and all-wheel drive)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 310 L | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 3.2 (46) |
| 330 S | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.1 (45) | 4 (58) |
| 330 S. Vehicles with all-wheel drive | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4 (58) |
| 350 L<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 L<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.2 (61) |
| 350 M | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.2 (61) |

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | | | |
| 390 M<br>390 L<br>390 L-E Jumbo | 235/56R16C 121/119 | 3.4 (49) | 4.9 (71) |
| 410 L | 235/65R16C 121/119 | 3.5 (51) | 5 (73) |
| 420 M<br>420 L<br>420 L-E Jumbo | 235/56R16C 121/119 | 3.5 (51) | 5.5 (80) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).

**Chassis Cab (front wheel drive)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 310 M | 215/65R16C 109/107 | 3.8 (55) | 4 (58) |
| 330 M<br>330 L | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4 (58) |
| 350 L<br>350 E-L Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 L<br>350 E-L Jumbo<br>350 ELWB Super Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.2 (61) |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.2 (61) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Chassis Cab (rear wheel drive)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 310 S | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 2.9 (42) | 3.2 (46) |
| 330 S | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.1 (45) | 4 (58) |
| 330 S Vehicles with all-wheel drive | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4 (58) |
| 350 E<br>350 L<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>350 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 E<br>350 L<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>350 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.2 (61) |
| 350 M<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb) | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.2 (61) |
| 390 L<br>390 L-E Jumbo | 235/56R16C 121/119 | 3.4 (49) | 4.9 (71) |
| 420 L<br>420 L-E Jumbo | 235/56R16C 121/119 | 3.5 (51) | 5.5 (80) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Van, Kombi and Chassis Cab (dual rear wheel)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 350 S<br>350 M<br>350 M (derated 470)<br>350 L<br>350 L (derated 470)<br>350 L-E (derated 470)<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>350 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 3 (44) |
| 355 M<br>355 L<br>355 L-E Jumbo | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 3 (44) |
| 410 L<br>410 L-E Jumbo (derated 470) | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 3.2 (46) |
| 430 L<br>430 L-E Jumbo<br>430 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 3.8 (55) |
| 460 LWB-E Jumbo | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 3.9 (57) |
| 470 M<br>470 L<br>470 L-E Jumbo<br>470 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 4.3 (62) |
| 470 LWB-E Jumbo Van, Single chassis cab and Double chassis cab<br>Vehicles with maximum rear axle weight 3,100 kg (6,834 lb) | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 4 (58) |

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 470 LWB-E Super Jumbo Van, Single chassis cab and Double chassis cab<br>Vehicles with maximum rear axle weight 3,100 kg (6,834 lb) | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 4 (58) |
| 500 M<br>500 L<br>500 L-E Jumbo<br>500 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 205/75R16C 113/111 | 4.8 (70) | 4.1 (59) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).

**Skeletal Chassis Vehicles (SVO, Motorhomes)**

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 350 L<br>350 L-E Jumbo<br>350 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.5 (65) |
| 350 M | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.2 (61) |
| 410 L<br>410 L-E Jumbo | 235/65R16C 121/119 | 3.4 (49) | 4.9 (71) |
| 430 L-E Jumbo<br>430 ELWB-EL Super Jumbo | 235/65R16C 121/119 | 3.4 (49) | 4.9 (71) |

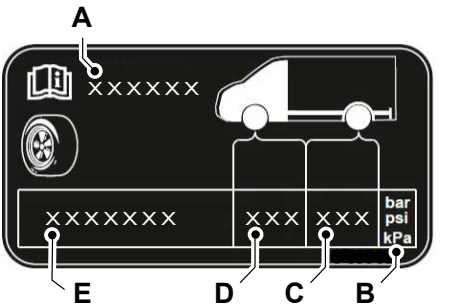
[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BUS

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** *If necessary remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*




E254055

A Vehicle model.
B Measure unit.
C Rear tire pressure.
D Front tire pressure.
E Tire size.

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 350 M.<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,750 kg (3,858 lb). | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.3 (48) | 4.1 (60) |
| 350 M.<br>Vehicles with maximum front axle weight 1,850 kg (4,079 lb). | 235/65R16C 115/113 | 3.5 (51) | 4.1 (60) |
| 410 L. | 235/65R16C 121/119 | 3.4 (49) | 4.9 (71) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Variant[1] | Tire Size | Front bar (psi) | Rear bar (psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 440 LWB-E Jumbo. | 235/65R16C 121/119 | 3.5 (51) | 5.75 (83) |
| 460 LWB-E. | 195/75R16C 107/105 | 4.6 (67) | 4 (58) |

[1] To ascertain the variant of your vehicle, refer to the vehicle identification plate. See **Vehicle Identification Plate Overview** (page 476).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.

**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

## TIRE ROTATION

**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

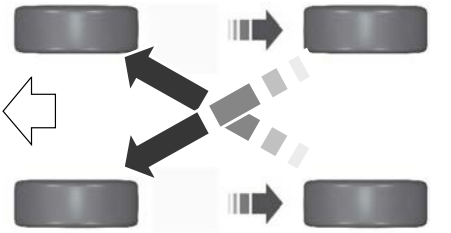
**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

**Note:** *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

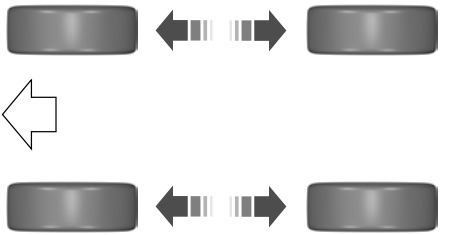
**Non-directional tires**





Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Directional tires**



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

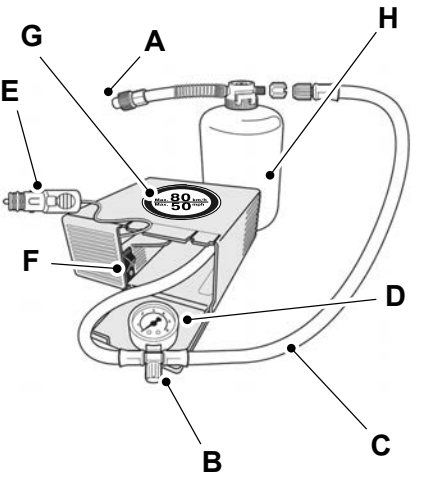
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

## LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the right-hand side stepwell.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS




E146784

| | |
|---|---|
| A | Protective cap |
| B | Pressure relief valve |
| C | Hose |
| D | Pressure gauge |
| E | Power plug with cable |
| F | Compressor switch |
| G | Label |
| H | Sealant bottle |

**Note:** *Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

**WARNING:** The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

1. Check for a punctured tire.

**Note:** *Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.*

2. Open the lid of the tire sealant and inflator kit.
3. Peel off the label G showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
4. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable E out of the temporary mobility kit.
5. Screw the hose C onto the sealant bottle.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Remove the protective cap A from the sealant bottle hose and screw the hose firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch F is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug E into the auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 157).
10. Start the engine.

**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

11. Move the compressor switch F to position 1.
12. After a minimum of two minutes move the compressor switch F to position 0 and unscrew the hose C from the sealant bottle. Unscrew the sealant bottle hose from the tire valve.
13. Screw the hose C onto the tire valve and move the compressor switch F to position 1.

**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

14. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure, but do not use the inflator for longer than 10 minutes. Move the compressor switch F to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge D. Unscrew the hose C from the tire valve.
15. Remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point.
16. Make sure the tire sealant and inflator kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The tire sealant and inflator kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately six miles (10 kilometers) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

**Note:** *When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.*

**Note:** *: If the tire pressure has dropped to 26 psi (1.8 bar) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 26 psi (1.8 bar), use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

**WARNING:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately 10 km (6.2 mi). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the tire sealant and the inflator kit and check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge D.
3. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure, repeat steps 13 to 16 and steps 1 to 2 (Checking the Tire Pressure). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 431).
4. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch F to position 0, remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point, unscrew the sealant bottle hose, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
5. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the wheel, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. Renew the sealant bottle as soon as possible after it has been used once.

**Note:** *The temporary mobility kit only provides an emergency repair. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the temporary mobility kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

**Note:** *After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.*

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle maintenance***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle maintenance***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

| Warning Lamp | Possible Cause | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Solid warning lamp | One or more tires are significantly underinflated | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure. |
| Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp | Temporary spare wheel in use | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
| | Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction | If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Tyre pressure low | Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure. |
| Tyre pressure monitor malfunction | The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |
| Tyre pressure sensor malfunction | If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

The locking wheel nut key is located in the glove box or next to the vehicle jack.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

E145138

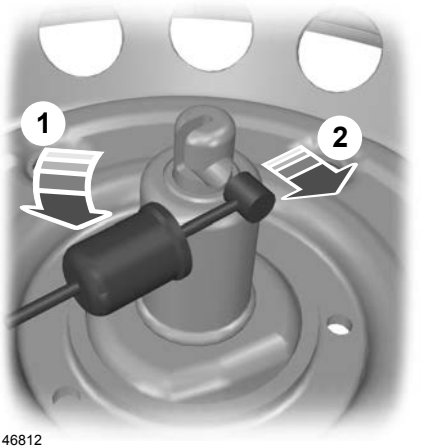
1. Open the rear doors and remove the grommet.

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Insert the square end of the wheel brace or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.

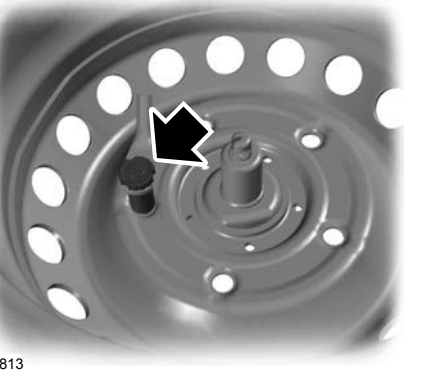
E146811

3. Raise the cable end cover.




E146812

4. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.

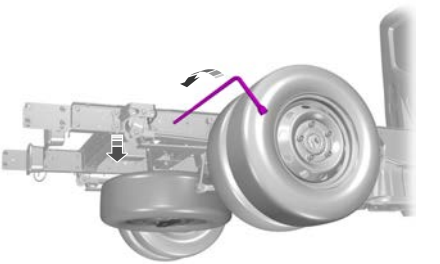


E146813

5. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
6. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

**Note:** *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.*

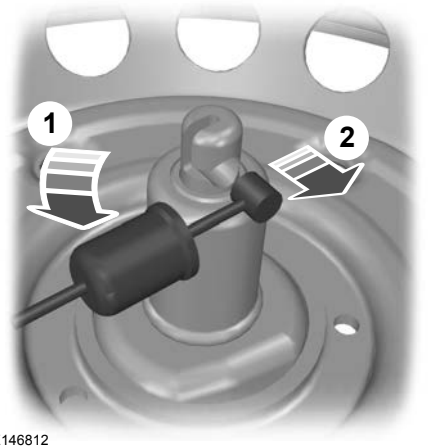
## Chassis Cab and Cutaway



1. Insert the square end of the wheel brace or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.

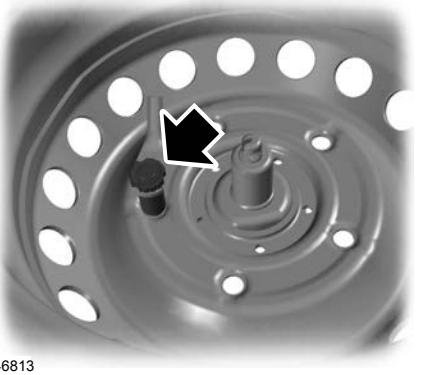
E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.




E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
5. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

**Note:** *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.*

## Vehicle Jack

**WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



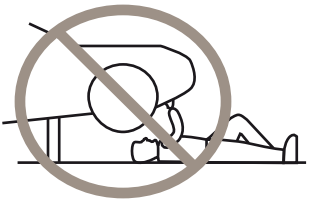
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

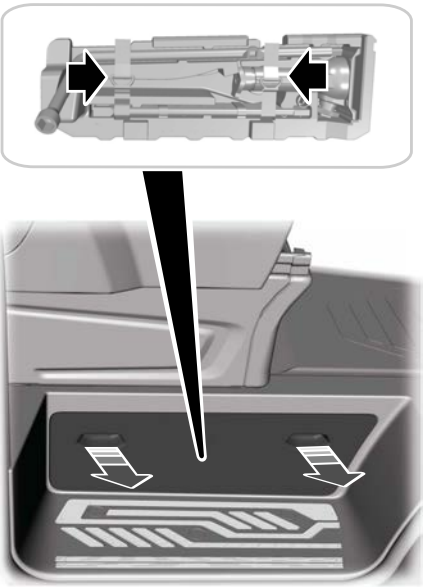
**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

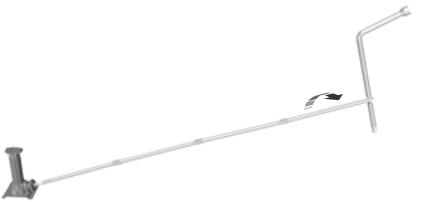


### Vehicle Jack Storage



The jack, jack handle and wheel brace are in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

**Note:** *The vehicle jack is in the load space area on vehicles with rear climate control.*



1. Assemble the jack rod.
2. Insert the flat end of the jack rod into the jack.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

3. Insert the square end of the jack rod into the wheel brace and rotate clockwise to raise your vehicle.

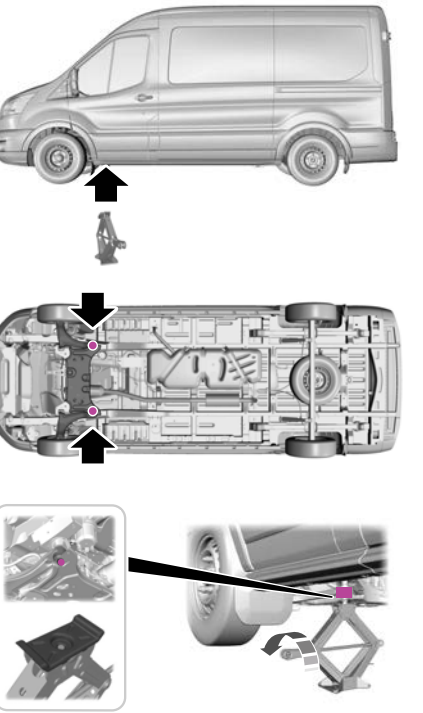
## Front Jacking Points

**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

**WARNING:** Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.*

**FWD**

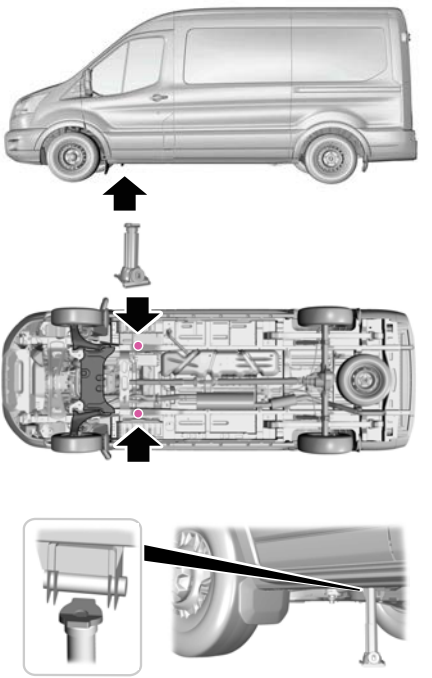


Position the head of the vehicle jack under the front sub-frame rear mounting bolts.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

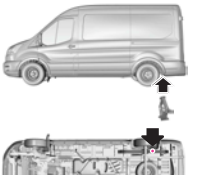
**RWD**



Position the head of the vehicle jack under the protrusions at the rear of front sub-frame.

## Rear Jacking Points

**FWD, Excluding: Motorhome Chassis**



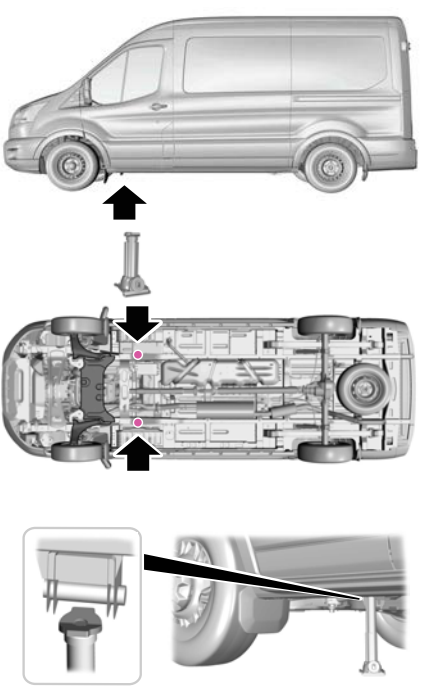
Position the vehicle jack under the rear leaf spring directly behind the rear wheel.

**Note:** *Position the vehicle jack on the flattest part of the spring and as close to the axle as possible.*



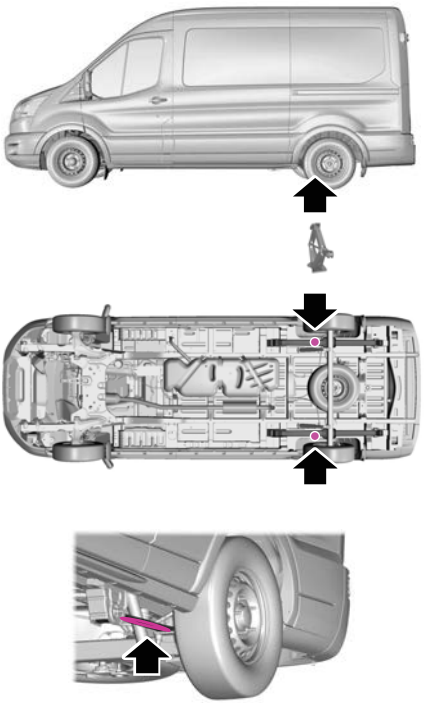
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**RWD**



Position the vehicle jack under the rear axle.

**350/410 FWD Motorhome Chassis**



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Position the vehicle jack under the rear leaf spring directly in front of the rear wheel.

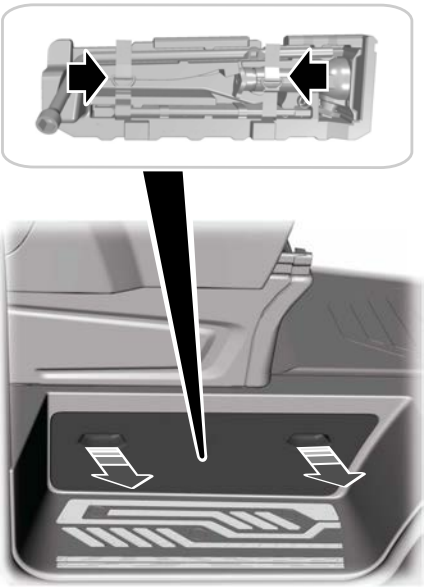
**Note:** *Position the vehicle jack on the flattest part of the spring and as close to the axle as possible.*



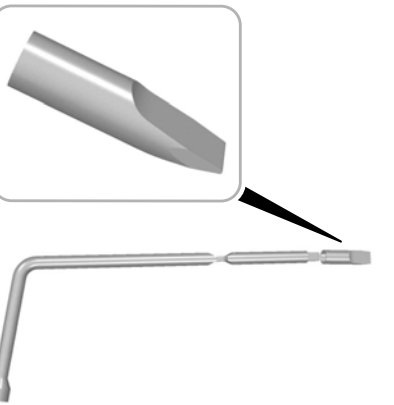
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Removing a Wheel Trim

### Vehicles With Steel Wheels



The wheel trim removal tool is in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell near the lug wrench.



1. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench between the wheel rim and the wheel trim.
2. Carefully remove the wheel trim.

## Removing a Road Wheel

1. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut.
2. Loosen the remaining wheel nuts, but do not remove them.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the road wheel.

**Note:** *Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.*

## Installing a Road Wheel

**WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



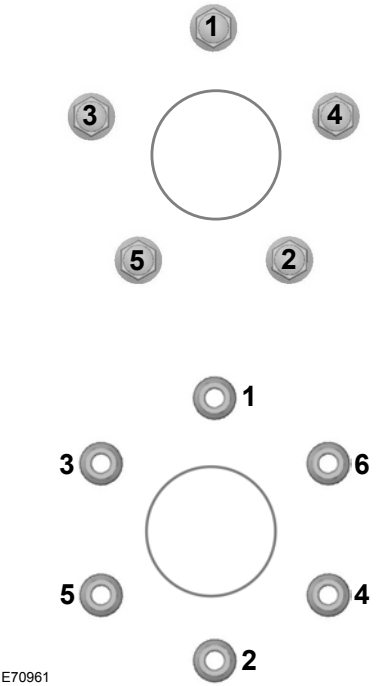
Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Install the wheel.



E70961

2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Fully tighten all of the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Install the wheel trim.

**Note:** *Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.*

**Note:** *Alloy wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.*

**Note:** *If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel replace it as soon as possible.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Check the wheel nuts for correct tightness and check the tire pressure as soon as possible. See* ***Tire Pressure Specifications*** *(page 431).*

### Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack

1. Attach the spare wheel bracket to the wheel using the retaining nut.
2. Slide the cable through the slot and attach the spare wheel bracket to the winch.
3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees and lower the cable end cover.

E145138

4. Insert the square end of the wheel brace or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket.

**Note:** *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. If you lower the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached, you may damage the winch mechanism.*

**Note:** *Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you feel a slip.*

5. Stow the vehicle jack, jack handle and wheel brace in their correct locations and secure them with the straps.

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - ELECTRIC MOTOR

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

**Note:** *: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, the warning indicator flashes if you fit the spare wheel to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the tire pressure monitoring system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. See* ***Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps*** *(page 446). To prevent damage occurring to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors, make sure you have the damaged tire repaired or replaced by a tire professional.*

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

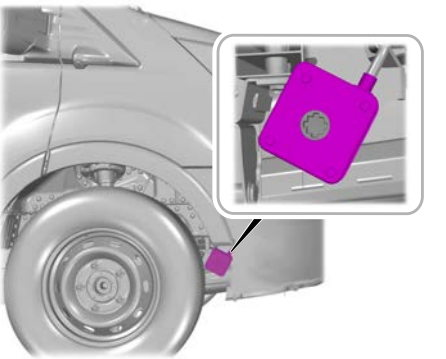
The spare wheel is under the front of the vehicle on all battery electric vehicles except E-LWB van, which is at the rear.

### Locking Lug Nuts (If Equipped)

You can obtain replacement locking lug nuts or a locking lug nut key using the reference number certificate.

The locking lug nut key is located in the glove box or in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

### Van and E-LWB Van



If you have a van, find the winch on the chassis rail in front of the right side front wheel.

E145138

If you have E-LWB van, open the rear doors and remove the grommet.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

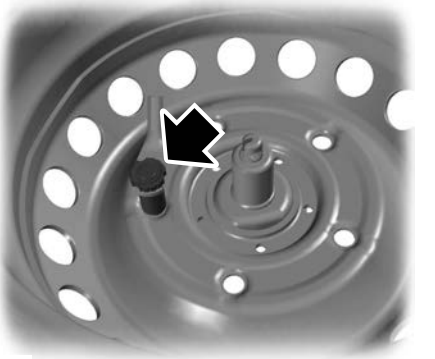
1. Insert the square end of the wheel brace or the short arm of the jack handle into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.

E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.

E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.
5. Leave the cable extended. You need to use it to stow the flat wheel and tire assembly.

**Note:** *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage to the winch mechanism could occur.*

## Vehicle Jack

**WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

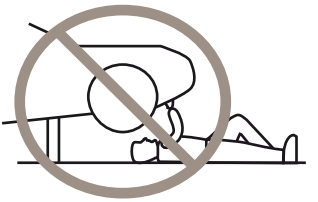
**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

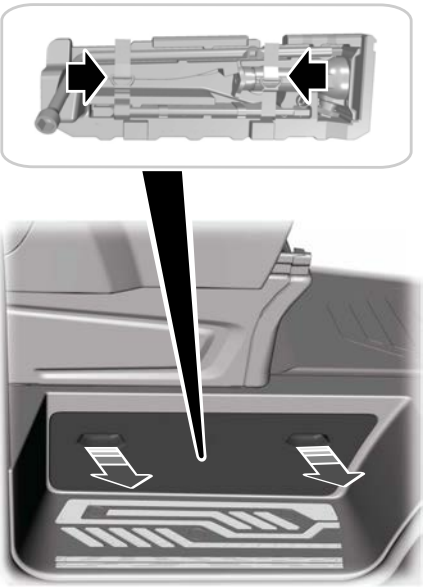
**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

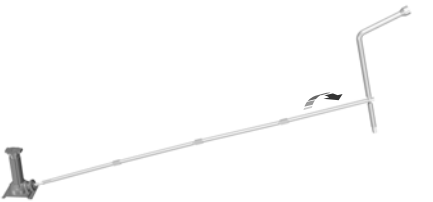


## Vehicle Jack Storage



The jack, jack handle and wheel brace are in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

**Note:** *The vehicle jack is in the load space area on vehicles with rear climate control.*



1. Assemble the jack rod.
2. Insert the flat end of the jack rod into the jack.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

3. Insert the square end of the jack rod into the wheel brace and rotate clockwise to raise your vehicle.

### Front Jacking Points

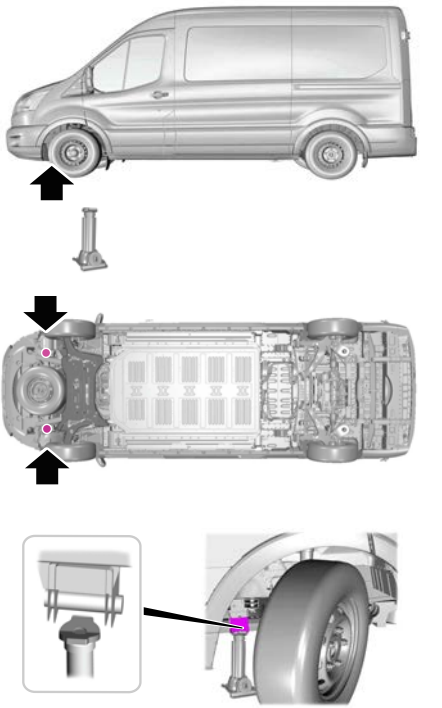
**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

**WARNING:** Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

**Note:** *In case of a flat tire on the front it could be necessary to jack your vehicle to reach the spare wheel. Withdraw the spare wheel by holding the tread.*

**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.*



Position the head of the vehicle jack on the bolted body brackets .

### Rear Jacking Points Vehicles

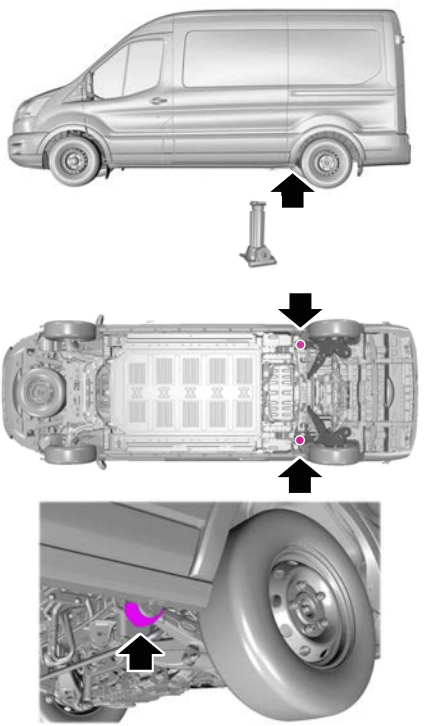
**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**WARNING:** Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

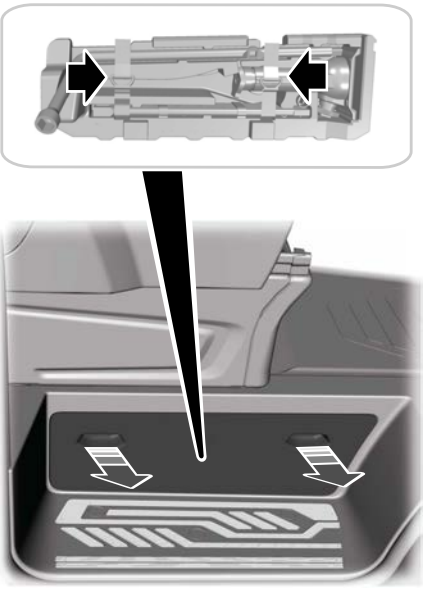
**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Position the head of the vehicle jack under the outer bush of the suspension arm.

## Removing a Wheel Trim (If Equipped)

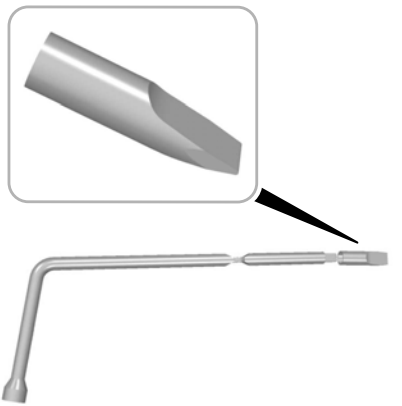
### Vehicles With Steel Wheels



The wheel trim removal tool is in the storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell near the lug wrench.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing



1. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench between the wheel rim and the wheel trim.
2. Carefully remove the wheel trim.

### Removing a Road Wheel

1. Use the locking lug nut key to loosen the locking lug nut.
2. Loosen the remaining lug nuts, but do not remove them.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

**Note:** *Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.*

### Installing a Road Wheel

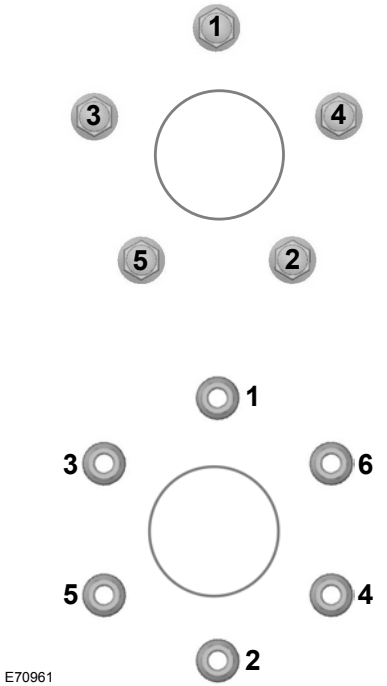
**WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Install the wheel.




2. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Install the wheel trim.

**Note:** *Make sure that the lug nuts are fully seated against the wheel.*

**Note:** *Alloy wheel lug nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.*

**Note:** *If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel replace it as soon as possible.*

**Note:** *Check the lug nuts for correct tightness and check the tire pressure as soon as possible.*

### Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack

**Note:** *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. If you lower the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached, you may damage the winch mechanism.*

1. Attach the spare wheel bracket to the wheel using the retaining nut.
2. Slide the cable through the slot and attach the spare wheel bracket to the winch.
3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees and lower the cable end cover.
4. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench into the socket. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** *Make sure the spare wheel is secure by tightening the winch until you feel a slip.*

5. Stow the vehicle jack, jack handle and lug wrench in their correct locations and secure them with the straps.

## WHEEL NUTS

### Lug Nut Torque

**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

| Bolt size | Nm ( lb.ft) |
|---|---|
| M14 x 1.5 | 204 (150) |

## Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - BUS/KOMBI/VAN

### Medium Wheelbase

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 5,531 (217.8) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474 (97.4) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,059 (81.1) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,490–2,834 (98.0–111.6) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,300 (129.9) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0) |
| Rear track. | 1,743–1,763 (68.6–69.4) |

### Long Wheelbase

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 5,981 (235.5) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474 (97.4) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,059 (81.1) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,481–2,792 (97.7–109.9) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,750 (147.6) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0) |
| Rear track. | 1,743–1,763 (68.6–69.4) |

### Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 6,704 (263.9) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474 (97.4) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,059–2,126 (81.1–83.7) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,746–2,781 (108.1–109.5) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Wheelbase. | 3,750 (147.6) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,740 (68.2–68.5) |
| Rear track. | 1,670–1,743 (65.7–68.6) |

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB/CHASSIS DOUBLE CAB

### Short Wheelbase

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 5,357 (210.9) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474 (97.4) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,324–2,352 (91.5–92.6) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,137 (123.5) |
| Front track. | 1,732 (68.2) |
| Rear track. | 1,743 (68.6) |

### Medium Wheelbase

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 5,767 (227.0) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,311–2,357 (91.0–92.8) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,504 (138.0) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0) |
| Rear track. | 1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Long Wheelbase

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 6,204 (244.3) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,316–2,349 (91.2–92.5) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,954 (155.7) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0) |
| Rear track. | 1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4) |

## Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 6,587–6,797 (259.3–267.6) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,316–2,350 (91.2–92.5) |
| Wheelbase. | 3,954 (155.7) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,752 (68.2–69.0) |
| Rear track. | 1,670–1,763 (65.7–69.4) |

## Extra Long Wheelbase With an Extended Frame

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length. | 7,612–7,797 (299.7–307.0) |
| Overall width including the exterior mirrors. | 2,474–2,746 (97.4–108.1) |
| Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors. | 2,098–2,198 (82.6–86.5) |
| Overall height excluding the antenna. | 2,326–2,339 (91.6–92.1) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Dimension Description | Dimension mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Wheelbase. | 4,522 (178.0) |
| Front track. | 1,732–1,740 (68.2–68.5) |
| Rear track. | 1,670–1,743 (65.7–68.6) |

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| FWD | 9.8 L (2.2 gal) |
| AWD/RWD | 11.5 L (2.5 gal) |

**Note:** *The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2 L (0.4 gal).*

### Materials

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30 | WSS-M2C950-A |

### Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

**Note:** *Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| FWD vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater. | 11.2 L (2.5 gal) |
| FWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater. | 12 L (2.6 gal) |
| FWD vehicles with an auxiliary heater. | 13.3 L (2.9 gal) |
| FWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater. | 13.7 L (3.0 gal) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater. | 10.4 L (2.3 gal) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater. | 11.7 L (2.6 gal) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles with an auxiliary heater. | 11.8 L (2.6 gal) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater. | 13.4 L (2.9 gal) |

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - ELECTRIC MOTOR

### HV Battery Cooling Loop

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| All. | 6.46 L (6.83 qt) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

## Motor and Electronics Cooling Loop

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| All. | 8.33 L (8.80 qt) |

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Antifreeze | WSS-M97B57-A2 |

# FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| Vehicles with standard fuel tank. | 70 L (15.4 gal) |
| Vehicles with larger fuel tank. | 95 L (20.9 gal) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBLUE

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

### Capacities

| Variant | Refrigerant | Refrigerant Oil |
|---|---|---|
| FWD vehicles without rear climate control. | 0.74 kg (26.1 oz) | 130 –0/+15 $cm^3$ (4.4 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz) |
| FWD vehicles with rear climate control. | 1.05 kg (37.0 oz) | 180 –0/+15 $cm^3$ (6.1 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles without rear climate control. | 0.74 kg (26.1 oz) | 167.5 ± 7.5 $cm^3$ (5.7 ± 0.3 fl oz) |
| AWD/RWD vehicles with rear climate control. | 1.15 kg (40.6 oz) | 252.5 ± 7.5 $cm^3$ (8.5 ± 0.3 fl oz) |

### Materials

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Refrigerant - R-134A | WSH-M17B19-A |
| Refrigerant - R-1234yf | WSS-M17B21-A |
| Compressor Oil - Air Conditioning 6U7J-M1C231-CA | WSH-M1C231-B |

**Note:** *Please check the label on the engine compartment for the correct specification.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - ELECTRIC MOTOR

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

**Capacities**

| Variant | Refrigerant | Refrigerant Oil |
|---|---|---|
| All. | 0.9 ± 0.02 kg (31.7 ± 0.7 oz) | 170 ml (5.7 fl oz) |

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Refrigerant - R-134A | WSH-M17B19-A |
| A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA | WSS-M2C31-B2 |

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

**Capacities**

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| All. | Fill as required. |

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA | WSS-M14P19-A |

## ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBLUE

### Capacities

| Variant | Quantity |
|---|---|
| All. | 22.4 L (4.9 gal) |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

**Materials**

| Name | Specification |
|---|---|
| Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx | WSS-M6C65-A2 |

**Note:** *We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

E71369

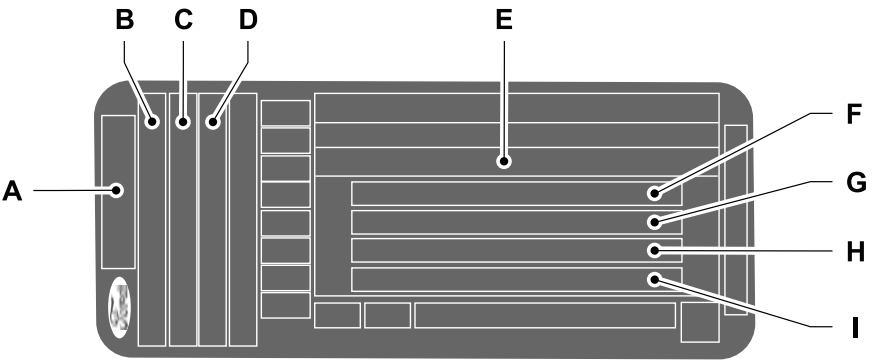
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel. You can also find it stamped into the right-hand front wheel arch.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW




A Model.
B Variant.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

C Engine designation.
D Engine power and emission level.
E Vehicle identification number.
F Gross vehicle weight.
G Gross train weight.
H Maximum front axle weight.
I Maximum rear axle weight.

**Note:** *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

**Note:** *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM

The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***FordPass Connect***.
3. Select ***Connectivity***.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Connectivity features***.
3. Select ***Data sharing***.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press ***Settings***.
2. Press ***FordPass Connect***.
3. Press ***Connectivity settings***.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Settings***.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Manage Wi-Fi Networks***.
4. Switch ***Wi-Fi*** on.
5. Press ***View Available Networks***.
6. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

#### Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

#### Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

### Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

### What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

### Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

### Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

### Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.

**Note:** *The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.*

3. Select ***Settings***.
4. Make sure that you have Wi-Fi visibility switched on.

**Note:** *The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.*

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Select ***Settings***.

**Note:** *The SSID is the hotspot name.*

4. Scroll to ***Hide password***.
5. Uncheck the box.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

#### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** *The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.*

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** *Secure websites do not redirect.*

**Note:** *If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

**Note:** *If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.*

**Note:** *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

**Note:** *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.

**Note:** *The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.*

3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Press ***Hotspot Visibility***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *The hotspot visibility default setting is on.*

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.

**Note:** *The network name is the hotspot name.*

4. Press ***Show Password***.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

#### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** *The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.*

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** *Secure websites do not redirect.*

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

**Note:** *If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

**Note:** *If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.*

**Note:** *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

**Note:** *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Select ***Settings***.
4. Select ***SSID: ___***.
5. Enter your required SSID.
6. Select ***Done***.
7. Select ***Password: ___***.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Select ***Done***.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Press ***Change Network Name***.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press ***Done***.
8. Press ***Change password***.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press ***Done***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

**Note:** *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Select a frequency.

## VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

### Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF

Press the button on the volume control.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

### Selecting the Radio

Press the button to select radio mode.

Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio sources.

### Selecting Media

Press the button to select media mode.

Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select ***Sources***.

Select the desired source.

## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

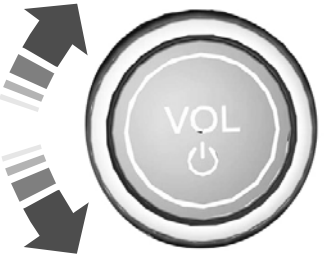
Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** *Not all sources can be paused.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME




Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** *A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.*

## MUTING THE AUDIO

Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

**Note:** *The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.*

**Note:** *The mute button is also available on the steering wheel control.*

## SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

E248947

## SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SELECTING A MENU ITEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

E248946

### Returning to the Previous Screen

## SELECTING A MENU ITEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

### Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Press ***Balance/Fade***.
4. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

### Tone Settings

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Press ***Tone Settings***.
4. Press the arrows or slider bar to adjust the settings.

### Speed Compensated Volume

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Press ***Adaptive Volume***.
4. Press a setting.

### Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Press ***DSP Occupancy***.
4. Press a setting.

### Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Press ***Sound Mode***.
4. Press a setting.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Press the button.

Select the clock and follow the instructions on the screen.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Clock settings***.
3. Set the time.

**Note:** *The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.*

### Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Clock settings***.
3. Switch ***Automatic time zone update*** on or off.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Clock***.
2. Adjust the clock.

# AM/FM RADIO

## AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

## SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

### Manually Changing Radio Stations

E248947

Rotate the control to change radio stations.

**Note:** *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

### Selecting a Station from the List

Press the ***OK*** button to view available stations.

**Note:** *Station list is only available for FM.*

## SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

### Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

**Note:** *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

### Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

### Selecting a Station from the List

Press ***Stations*** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

**Note:** *Station list is only available for FM.*

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5, VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

### Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, some features are not available while the vehicle is in motion at or above 8 km/h (5 mph). Settings that are not critical while driving your vehicle are shown as restricted on your display. Some of these settings include:

- System updates.
- Driver assistance settings.

These restricted features become available when your vehicle is no longer in motion.

## STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

### Audio System

Audio system muted.

### Connected Device

Cell phone microphone muted.

Phone call in progress.

Media player connected.

Cell phone network signal strength.

Cell phone roaming.

Text message received.

Unread email message.

Automatic crash notification system off.

Cell phone battery status.

### Vehicle Data

Wi-Fi available.

Wi-Fi connected.

Vehicle data sharing on.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Vehicle data sharing off.

Vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

### Vehicle System Update

Vehicle system update available.

Vehicle system update requires schedule.

Vehicle system update requires consent.

Vehicle system update requires Wi-Fi.

Vehicle system update schedule reminder.

Vehicle system update not successful.

Vehicle system update successful.

## INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

Swipe up and down to switch between the cards.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

## SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Ford Assistant***.
3. Switch ***Listen for Wake Word*** on.
4. Press ***Preferred Wake Word***.
5. Press a setting.

## BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word.

Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel.

## VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

**General Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Start Over. | The system resets the current voice interaction. |
| Cancel. | The system ends the current voice interaction. |
| Next Page. | The system goes to the next page. |
| Previous Page. | The system goes to the previous page. |
| Help. | The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen. |

**Entertainment Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Play The Beatles. | The system plays the selected music. |
| Show music by The Beatles. | The system shows the selected music. |
| Tune to FM 101.9. | The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM. |
| Set the station to Sirius Channel 2. | The system tunes the radio to Sirius Channel 2. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Climate Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Set the temperature to low. | The system sets the temperature to the minimum. |
| Set the temperature to 22°C (72°F). | The system sets the temperature to 22°C (72°F). |

**Phone Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Call Henry. | The system calls Henry using your connected device. |
| Dial (phone number). | The system dials the selected phone number. |
| Send a text message to Henry. | The system begins a dictated text message. |
| Read my message from Henry. | The system reads you the most recent message from Henry. |

**Apps Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Mobile Apps. | The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system. |
| List Mobile Apps. | The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps. |
| Find Mobile Apps | The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device. |

**Navigation Examples**

| Command | Result |
|---|---|
| Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'. | The system begins guided navigation to the address. |
| Where is ___ | The system searches for the requested point of interest. |
| Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road. | The system shows directions to the selected intersection. |
| Cancel route. | The system ends guided navigation to the destination. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2. Press ***Add phone*** on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

### *Recent Call list*

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### *Contacts*

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

### Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

### *Do not disturb*

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### *Phone Keypad*

Directly dial a number.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## Voice Control

Say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

**Note:** *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

## Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Contacts | You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Recent Call list | You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Favourites | You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call. |

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

| Menu Item | Action and Description |
|---|---|
| Phone Keypad | Select the digits of the number you wish to call. |
| Call | The system begins the call. |

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Accept |

**Note:** *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

**To reject the call, select:**

| Menu Item |
|---|
| Reject |

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

## During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| Item | |
|---|---|
| End call | Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel. |
| Keypad | Press this to access the phone keypad. |

| Item | |
|---|---|
| Mute | You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you. |
| Hndsfree off | Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to the touch-screen. |

## SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

| Menu Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Hear it | Hear the text message. |
| View | View the text message. |
| Call | Call the sender. |
| Reply | Reply to the text message with a standard text message. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth***®.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth***®.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Connectivity***.
4. Press ***Bluetooth***.
5. Press ***Add a Bluetooth Device***.

**Note:** *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.*

6. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** *A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.*

7. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.*

The ***Bluetooth®*** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by ***Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Sources***.
4. Press ***Bluetooth***.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## APP PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press ***MOBILE APPS*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Mobile Apps Help***.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via ***Bluetooth®*** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** *Some apps can run through* ***Apple CarPlay*** *if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *For troubleshooting assistance press* ***Compatible Apps List*** *under* ***Mobile Apps Help****.*

## ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press ***MOBILE APPS*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Mobile Apps Help***.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via ***Bluetooth®*** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** *Some apps can run through* ***Android Auto*** *if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Access the system applications.
6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when* ***MOBILE APPS*** *are enabled.*

**Note:** *For troubleshooting assistance press* ***Compatible Apps List*** *under* ***Mobile Apps Help****.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.*

### Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

### Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Disable***.

### Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Connect to Apple CarPlay***.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

### Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

### Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.*

### Disabling Android Auto

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Disable***.

### Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Connect to Android Auto***.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the homescreen.

**Note:** *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

**Note:** *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

### CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

**Note:** *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch **Connected Navigation** on or off.

**Note:** *Switching off this feature disables all features of the* ***Connected Navigation****.*

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Note:** *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

**Note:** *Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.*

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

**Note:** *Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.*

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT

Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

### EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE

Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

When you have an active subscription and Trailer Towing Navigation is switched on, the system will calculate the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

### Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

### Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.
5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

### Navigation Alerts

Alerts will appear on the navigation map while driving. An orange alert triangle indicates you should proceed with caution. When not following active guidance to a destination, a red alert triangle may appear and indicates you should avoid the road and find a detour.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## HOW DOES DRIVER IDENTIFICATION WORK

Driver identification allows drivers to log into the vehicle using a specific user ID or profile.

## SIGNING IN AS A DRIVER

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver ID***.
3. Select or add a driver as necessary.
4. Follow the screen istructions and log in.

### Configuring Your *Driver ID* Avatar

1. Log in with your user ID.
2. Press your avatar image.
3. Select the settings you prefer.

## DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER IDENTIFICATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
| Driver not found. | The user ID used is not found in database. |
| Wrong PIN or password | The wrong PIN or password was entered. |
| Driver authentication time out. Unable to establish connection to the cloud. | When logging in, the vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud. |
| Unable to establish connection to the cloud. Try again. | The vehicle is not able to establish a connection to the cloud. |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## UPDATING THE VEHICLE SYSTEMS WIRELESSLY

Software Updates allow you to update your vehicle system software wirelessly. To make sure you receive all updates, set a recurring schedule and connect to Wi-Fi. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 478). Updates may take longer if not connected to Wi-Fi, or may not download at all. Multiple connections may be required to complete a download.

### Enabling Software Updates

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***System Updates***.
3. Switch ***Automatic Updates*** on.

**Note:** *Software Updates are enabled by default.*

**Note:** *If you do not want to receive Software Updates you can turn them off. You will not be notified of new updates.*

### Scheduling an Update

Scheduling an update allows you to set a convenient time for the update to complete. We recommend updating overnight when your vehicle is not in use.

Make sure your vehicle is connected and ***Automatic Updates*** is enabled.

Once you complete these steps, your schedule will be saved for future updates. As long as an update is not in process you can adjust your schedule.

**Note:** *Some updates may be applied outside of your set schedule. Information about the unscheduled update appears on the touchscreen after it is applied.*

#### Using the Settings Menu

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***System Updates***.
3. Press ***Schedule Updates***.
4. Use the controls to set the time and day of the update.
5. Save the schedule.

**Note:** *You can set the updates to occur at any time.*

#### Using the Status Bar Icon

When an update is available, tap the notification icon and follow the prompts on the screen. Additional Software Update icons may appear on the status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 490).

### Applying a Software Update

You can see the progress of the update on the touchscreen. An update cannot be canceled once it has been started.

During scheduled updates you will not be able to drive your vehicle, start the vehicle, use remote controls to lock and unlock the vehicle. The alarm, central locks, and door tones are disabled. The electronic door lock will not function during an update. You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on. Pull the handle until it stops to use the mechanical latch. Some updates may not allow you to use your vehicle during the update process.

**Note:** *Some updates can complete in the background, but more complex updates can take up to 45 minutes.*

**Note:** *Double locking is switched off and central locking is switched on during and after an update.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is plugged in, charging will stop during an update and resume when the update is complete.*



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

### Software Update Requirements

If certain requirements are not met during a scheduled update, the update will be postponed. You can update your schedule if you want to retry the update sooner. The requirements for the update are as listed:

- Your vehicle is not running.
- Your vehicle is stopped.
- Your vehicle is parked.
- The hazard indicators are switched off.
- The alarm is not sounding.
- The doors are closed.
- The parking lights are switched off.
- You are not pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is not in progress.
- The Stop Safely lamp is not illuminated. See **Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps** (page 107).

### Viewing Update Information

If an update is successful, the touchscreen will provide additional details or statuses about the update.

**Note:** *You can also access this information under the* ***System Updates*** *tile.*

If an update is not successful, follow the prompt that appears on the touchscreen.

## PERFORMING A MASTER RESET

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***General***.
3. Press ***Reset***.
4. Press ***Master Reset***.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ROLLOVER WARNING

**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

## THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit *http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html*.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit *www.wirelessconformity.ford.com*.

## REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of ***REACH***, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

To find out more about the ***REACH*** directive, search ***REACH*** on the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find the local Ford website, visit https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html.*

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

**Description of Other Rights and Limitations.**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

**SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Disclaimer of Warranty**

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

**Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction**

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

**Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

**(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(I) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

**Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

***1. Safe and Lawful Use***

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

***2. Account Information***

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

***3. Software License***

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

***3.1 License Limitations***

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

***4. Disclaimers***

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

***5. Limitation of Liability***

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

***6. Arbitration and Governing Law***

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

***7. Assignment***

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

***8. Miscellaneous***

***8.1***

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

***8.2***

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

***8.3***

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

***8.4***

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

***8.5***

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

***8.6***

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

***9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions***

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

**9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### *9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd*

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### *Terms and Conditions*

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

| NOTICE OF USE |
| --- |
| CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE |
| CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606 |
| This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided. |
| © 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved. |

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Territory | Notice |
|---|---|
| Argentina | IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO" |
| Ecuador | "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®" |
| Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique | |
| Mexico | "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)" |

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Country | Notice |
|---|---|
| Jordan | "© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data. |

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

| | |
|---|---|
| Austria | "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen" |
| Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine | "© EuroGeographics" |
| France | "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®" |
| Germany | "Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen" |
| Great Britain | "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010" |
| Greece | "Copyright Geomatics Ltd." |
| Hungary | "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd." |
| Italy | "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana." |
| Norway | "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority" |
| Portugal | "Source: IgeoE – Portugal" |
| Spain | "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG" |
| Sweden | "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden." |
| Switzerland | "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie. |

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

### AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## VII. China Territory

### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### *Limited Warranty*

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

***Customer Remedies***

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

***Governing Law.***

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

**Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

***Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)***

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

***Taiwan Territory***

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

### SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

| Website |
| --- |
| www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/ |

#### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

| Website |
| --- |
| www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/ |

#### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

#### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

#### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

#### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

#### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

**7. Please Note**

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at *https://azureford.sharepoint.com/sites/SVEBEMMPUBLIC*.

This is the technical guide for the modification and conversion of Ford Commercial Vehicles. For access you need to register a Ford Guest Account before following the link.

To request a FREE account please email BEMM2@ford.com with the following information:

- Full name.
- Company.
- Email address.

Ford Motor Company cannot allow external partners to access SharePoint sites leveraging a public domain email account. Public domain email addresses are those that are freely available on the Internet and do not require a paid service. Examples include: Gmail, Hotmail, Live, AOL, Yahoo, iCloud, Outlook, etc. Please apply using a company-maintained email address (e.g. username@company.com).



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

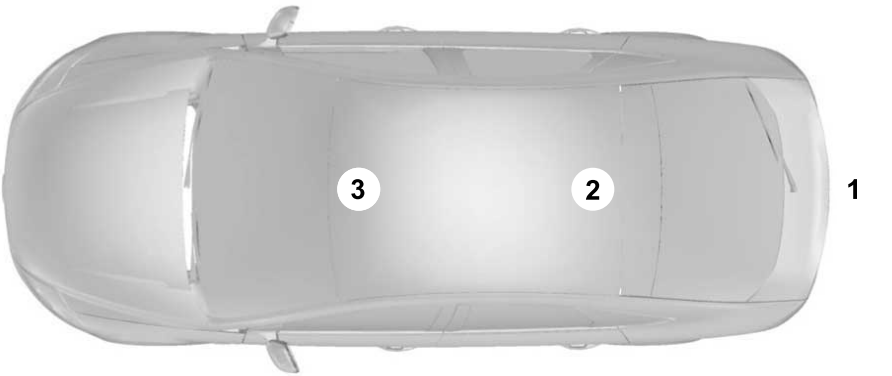
**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start,* ***Bluetooth®*** *connectivity or satellite navigation.*

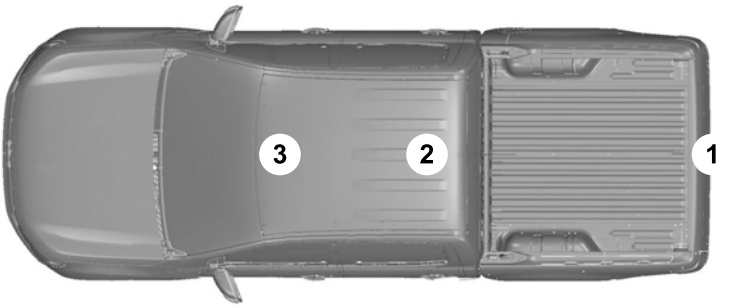
**Note:** *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

**Car/SUV**



**Van**

**Truck**



| Frequency Band MHz | Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS) | Antenna Positions |
|---|---|---|
| 1-30 | 50 | 1 |
| 50-54 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 68-88 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 142-176 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 380-512 | 50 | 2, 3 |
| 806-870 | 10 | 2, 3 |



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# 1

12V Battery....400
12V Battery Precautions....400
Battery Management System Limitations....401
Changing the 12V Battery....401
Charging the 12V Battery....404
How Does the Battery Management System Work....401
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery....404
Resetting the Battery Sensor....404
What Is the Battery Management System....401
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - 2.0L EcoBlue....404
12V Battery – Information Messages....404
12V Battery – Warning Lamps....404
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Electric Motor....405
12V Battery – Information Messages....406
12V Battery – Warning Lamps....405

# 3

360 Degree Camera....279
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines....280
360 Degree Camera Limitations....279
360 Degree Camera Precautions....279

# A

A/C
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....126
About This Publication....19
ABS
See: Brakes....249
Accessing Navigation....502
Accessing the Emergency Exit - Bus....365
Accessing the Load Bed....341
Opening the Side Panel....341
Opening the Tailgate....342
Opening the Tailgate to the Middle Position....342
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position....175
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....170
Accessing the Trip Computer....116
AC Charging....221
Connecting the Charger....221
Stopping Charging....226
Active Park Assist....282
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting....284
Active Park Assist Precautions....282
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting....284
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....284
Active Park Assist – Information Messages....284
Adaptive Cruise Control....288
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....295
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control....294
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation....291
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators....293
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations....289
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions....288
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....295
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages....295
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue....474
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification....204
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors....102
Adjusting the Headlamps....406
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness....98
Adjusting the Map....502
Changing the Format of the Map....502
Zooming the Map In and Out....502
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height....45



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy....44
Adjusting the Sound Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....486
Adjusting the Sound Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....486
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance....306
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....86
Adjusting the Volume....485
Aid Mode....310
How Does Aid Mode Work....310
What Is Aid Mode....310
Airbag Precautions....48
Airbags....47
Airbags – Troubleshooting....50
Airbags – Troubleshooting....50
Airbags – Audible Warnings....50
Airbags – Warning Lamps....50
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....126
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue....472
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Electric Motor....473
Alert and Aid Mode....311
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work....311
What Is Alert and Aid Mode....311
Alert Mode....310
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity....310
How Does Alert Mode Work....310
What Is Alert Mode....310
All-Wheel Drive....248
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....248
All-Wheel Drive Limitations....248
All-Wheel Drive Precautions....248
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....248
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages....248
AM/FM Radio....487
AM/FM Radio Limitations....487
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station....487
Anti-Lock Braking System....249
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations....249
Anti-Theft Alarm System....81
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....82
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....82
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work....81
What Are the Inclination Sensors....81
What Are the Interior Sensors....81
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System....81
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm....82
What Is the Perimeter Alarm....81
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....82
Setting the Alarm Security Level....82
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off....83
What are the Alarm Security Levels....82
What Is Ask on Exit....82
Appendices....536
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission....256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency....256
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission....256
Applying the Parking Brake....252
App Precautions....500
App Requirements....500
Apps....500
Audio System....484
AM/FM Radio....487
Audio System Precautions....484
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....101
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations....101
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....101
Auto Hold....264
Auto Hold Indicators....264
Autolamps....92
Autolamp Settings....92
What Are Autolamps....92
Autolock....70
Autolock Requirements....70
Switching Autolock On and Off....70
What Is Autolock....70



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....257
Automatic Crash Shutoff....364
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions....364
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle....364
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff....364
Automatic Emergency Braking....328
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off....329
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking....328
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....169
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work....169
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop....170
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off....170
What Is Automatic Engine Stop....169
Automatic High Beam Control....94
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators....96
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations....95
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions....95
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements....95
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work....94
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control....96
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off....96
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....96
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages....96
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission....245
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations....245
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work....245
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission....246
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission....247
Automatic Transmission....243
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission....245
Automatic Transmission Positions....243
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting....247
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission....245
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission....244
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators....244
Automatic Transmission Positions....243
Drive (D)....243
Low (L)....243
Neutral (N)....243
Park (P)....243
Reverse (R)....243
Automatic Transmission Precautions....243
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting....247
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages....247
Auto Mode....121
Auto Mode Indicators....121
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....121
Switching Dual Mode On and Off....123
Autorelock....71
How Does Autorelock Work....71
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning....180
Auto-Start-Stop....178
Auto-Start-Stop Settings....182
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....180
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators....180
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions....178
Auto-Start-Stop Settings....182
Setting the Engine Stop Speed....182
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....180
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions....181



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages....180
Autounlock....70
Autounlock Requirements....70
Switching Autounlock On and Off....70
What Is Autounlock....70
Autowipers....87
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor....87
Autowipers Settings....87
What Are Autowipers....87
Auxiliary Heater....130
Auxiliary Heater Indicators....130
Auxiliary Heater Precautions....130
AWD
See: All-Wheel Drive....248

# B

Beginning a Voice Interaction....492
Blind Spot Assist....311
Blind Spot Assist Indicators....312
Blind Spot Assist Limitations....312
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work....311
What Is Blind Spot Assist....311
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....313
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators....314
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations....314
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work....313
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....313
Blind Spot Information System....317
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting....320
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage....319
Blind Spot Information System Indicators....320
Blind Spot Information System Limitations....317
Blind Spot Information System Precautions....317
Blind Spot Information System Requirements....318
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting....320
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages....321
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps....320
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage....319
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations....319
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work....319
Selecting a Trailer....320
Setting a Trailer Length....320
Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off....319
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage....319
Bluetooth®....499
Body Control Module Fuse Box....382
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box....382
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box....383
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....388
Booster Seats....41
Bottle Holders....159
Bottle Holder Precautions....159
Locating the Bottle Holders....159
Brake Fluid Specification....250
Brake Over Accelerator....249
Brake Precautions....249
Brakes....249
Anti-Lock Braking System....249
Brakes – Troubleshooting....250
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/10-Speed Automatic Transmission....245
Brake Shift Interlock Precautions....245
Using Brake Shift Interlock....245
What Is Brake Shift Interlock....245
Brakes – Troubleshooting....250
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions....250
Brakes – Warning Lamps....250
Breaking-In....354



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

# C


Canceling the Set Speed....286
Canceling the Set Speed Limit....303
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering....306
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering....306
Capacities and Specifications....466
Cargo Lamps - Van....98
Resetting the Cargo Lamp Switch....98
Switching the Cargo Lamps On and Off....98
Center Display Limitations....490
Center Display Overview....490
Center Display Precautions....490
Changing a Flat Tire - 2.0L EcoBlue....448
Changing a Flat Tire - Electric Motor....457
Changing a Road Wheel....448
Changing the Parking Heater Remote Control Battery....133
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition....56
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....57
Changing the Set Speed Limit....303
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....482
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles Without: SYNC....482
Charge Port Indicators....220
Charging a Device....149
Charging Equipment....209
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols....237
Charging Your Vehicle....209
AC Charging....221
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting....239
DC Charging....228
Charging Your Vehicle Hints....237
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions....209
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting....239
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions....240
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages....239
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps....239
Checking Local Hazard Information Status....302
Checking MyKey System Status....63
Checking the Brake Fluid....249
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level....241
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level....203
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status....204
Checking the Tire Pressures....431
Checking the Wiper Blades....88
Child Restraint Anchor Points....36
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points....36
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points....36
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points....36
Child Restraints....38
Child Restraint Position Information....38
Installing Child Restraints....41
Child Safety....35
Child Restraint Anchor Points....36
Child Restraints....38
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting....43
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting....43
Child Safety Locks – Information Messages....43
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Power Sliding Door....42
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles Without: Power Sliding Door....42
Child Safety Precautions....35
Cigar Lighter....158
Cigar Lighter Precautions....158
Cleaning the Exterior....424
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors....425




Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel....424
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps....424
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics....425
Cleaning the Engine Compartment....425
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions....424
Cleaning the Underbody....425
Cleaning Wheels....424
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades....424
Cleaning the Interior....425
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats....427
Cleaning Displays and Screens....426
Cleaning Fabric....426
Cleaning Leather....426
Cleaning Plastic....426
Cleaning Seatbelts....427
Cleaning Storage Compartments....427
Cleaning the Instrument Panel....425
Cleaning Vinyl....427
Clearing All MyKeys....62
Climate Control....119
Auto Mode....121
Climate Control Hints - 2.0L EcoBlue....123
Climate Control Hints....128
Climate Control Hints - Electric Motor....124
Closing the Sliding Door....72
Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle....72
Closing the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle....73
Closing the Sliding Door With the Remote Control....76
Clutch Fluid Specification....241
Cold Weather Precautions....354
Configuring the Trip Computer....116
Connected Vehicle....478
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....479
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....478
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem....26
Connected Vehicle Limitations....478
Connected Vehicle Requirements....478
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....479
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions....479
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device....499
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....478
Connecting FordPass to the Modem....479
Enabling and Disabling the Modem....478
What Is the Modem....478
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....479
Connecting Your Phone....494
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle....535
Coolant....396
Adding Coolant....397
Changing the Coolant....398
Checking the Coolant Level....396
Coolant – Information Messages....400
Coolant Precautions....396
Coolant – Warning Lamps....399
Managing the Coolant Temperature....399
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue....470
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Electric Motor....470
Crash and Breakdown Information....359
Automatic Crash Shutoff....364
Fail-Safe Cooling - 2.0L EcoBlue....366
Jump Starting the Vehicle....359
Post-Crash Alert System....363
Post Impact Braking....364
Recovery Towing....365
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition....62
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....62
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....481
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles Without: SYNC....481
Cross Traffic Alert....322
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting....324
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage....323

Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....324
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....322
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....322
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....324
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....324
Cross Traffic Alert – Warning Lamps.....324
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....323
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....323
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....323
Cruise Control.....286
Cruise Control Indicators.....287
Cup Holders.....159
Cup Holder Precautions.....159
Customer Information.....508
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....112

# D

Data Privacy - 2.0L EcoBlue.....23
Data Privacy.....23
Data Privacy - Electric Motor.....24
DC Charging.....228
Connecting the Charger.....228
Stopping Charging.....230
Declaration of Conformity.....508
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards.....85
Device Holder.....161
Installing and Removing a Device.....161
Diesel Particulate Filter.....196
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....197
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....199
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....197
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Limitations.....198
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Precautions.....197
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration Requirements.....197
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....198
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....197
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....196
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....197
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....199
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....199
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....199
Directing the Flow of Air.....121
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode.....301
Distance Alert.....328
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert.....328
What Is Distance Alert.....328
Distance Indication.....328
Distance Indication Indicator.....328
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....328
What Is Distance Indication.....328
Door Lock Indicators.....71
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....71
Doors and Locks.....67
Autolock.....70
Autorelock.....71
Autounlock.....70
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....71
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....69
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....67
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....71
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....71
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....71
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - 2.0L EcoBlue.....395
Drive Mode Control.....298
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....299
Drive Modes - 2.0L EcoBlue.....298
Drive Modes - Electric Motor.....298



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting....299
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages....299
Drive Modes - 2.0L EcoBlue....298
Eco....298
Mud/Ruts....298
Normal....298
Slippery....298
Tow/Haul....298
Drive Modes - Electric Motor....298
Eco....298
Normal....298
Slippery....299
Driver Alert....331
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....332
Driver Alert Precautions....331
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....332
Driver Alert – Information Messages....332
Driver Identification....505
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting....505
Driver Identification – Troubleshooting....505
Driver Identification – Information Messages....505
Driving Economically....354
Driving Hints....354
Driving in Special Conditions....355
Electric Vehicle....356
Driving in Special Conditions....355
Driving In Sand....356
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain....355
Driving Through Mud and Water....355
Emergency Maneuvers....355
Driving on Snow and Ice....354
Driving Through Shallow Water - 2.0L EcoBlue....356
Driving Through Shallow Water - Electric Motor....357

# E

Eco Coach....300
Efficient Drive Mode....301
Trip Summary....301
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators....301
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning....257
Electric Parking Brake....256
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....257
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....257
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages....258
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps....257
Electric Vehicle....356
Maximizing Your Driving Range....356
Electromagnetic Compatibility....536
Emergency Assistance....52
Emergency Call Limitations....53
Emergency Call Requirements....52
Emergency Call System Data - 2.0L EcoBlue....27
Emergency Call System Data - Electric Motor....27
Emergency Equipment....371
Emergency Towing....369
Enabling Apps on an Android Device....500
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device....500
Enabling Local Hazard Information - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....302
Enabling Remote Start....117
End User License Agreement....510
Energy Consumption Figures....208
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - 2.0L EcoBlue....107
Engine Cooling Fan - 2.0L EcoBlue....396
Engine Oil - 2.0L EcoBlue....394
Adding Engine Oil....394
Checking the Engine Oil Level....394
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification....395
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview....394
Engine Oil – Information Messages....395
Resetting the Engine Oil Change Reminder....394
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBlue....469
Entering a Parallel Parking Space....283

Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space....283
Environment....28
Event Data....25
Exiting a Parking Space....284
Exterior Bulbs....408
Changing a Front Fog Lamp Bulb....414
Changing a Front Side Marker Lamp Bulb....413
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb....412
Changing a Headlamp Bulb....411
Changing a High Mounted Stoplamp Bulb....419
Changing a License Plate Lamp Bulb....419
Changing a Mirror Turn Signal Lamp Bulb....415
Changing an Entry Lamp Bulb....415
Changing a Rear Fog Lamp Bulb....414
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb....416
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb....417
Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb....418
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb....417
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart....408
Removing a Headlamp Assembly....410
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly....410
Exterior Lamps....92
Exterior Lamp Audible Warning....94
Exterior Lamp Indicators....94
How Do Cornering Lamps Work....93
Switching the Front Fog Lamps On and Off....93
Switching the Rear Floodlamps On and Off....94
Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On and Off....94
Switching the Side Marker Lamps On and Off....92
Switching the Turn Signal Lamps On and Off....92
Exterior Lighting Control....90
Exterior Lighting....90
Autolamps....92
Automatic High Beam Control....94
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....96
Exterior Lamps....92
Headlamps....90
Headlamps – Troubleshooting....91
Exterior Mirrors....102

# F

Fail-Safe Cooling - 2.0L EcoBlue....366
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated....367
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators....367
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work....366
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling....366
Fan
See: Engine Cooling Fan - 2.0L EcoBlue....396
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts....44
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank....202
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather....202
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump....202
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container....203
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Flat Tire - 2.0L EcoBlue....448
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Electric Motor....457
Floor Mats....358
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors....102
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors....102
Frequently Asked Questions....60
Front Door Storage....160
Opening the Front Door Storage Compartment....160
Front Parking Aid....271
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings....271
Front Parking Aid Limitations....271
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors....271
What is the Front Parking Aid....271
Front Seat Precautions....136



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Front Seats....136
Heated Seats....142
Manual Seats....137
Power Seats....140
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings....195
Fuel and Refueling....189
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....195
Fuel Quality....190
Refueling....192
Running Out of Fuel....190
Fuel and Refueling Precautions....189
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....195
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages....195
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps....195
Fuel Consumption Figures....194
Fuel Consumption Regulations....194
Fuel Economy Display....113
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - 2.0L EcoBlue....423
Fuel Gauge - 2.0L EcoBlue....105
Fuel Gauge Limitations....105
Locating the Fuel Filler Door....105
What Is Distance to Empty....106
What Is the Fuel Gauge....105
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder....106
Fuel Quality....190
Selecting the Correct Fuel....190
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.0L EcoBlue....471
Fuel Tank Capacity....193
Fuse Precautions....372
Fuses....372
Body Control Module Fuse Box....382
Fuses – Troubleshooting....387
High Current Fuse Box....385
Interior Fuse Box....376
Under Hood Fuse Box....372
Fuses – Troubleshooting....387
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions....387

# H

Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....406
Headlamps....90
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps....91
Headlamp Indicators....91
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off....90
Using the High Beam Headlamps....90
Headlamps – Troubleshooting....91
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions....91
Heated Seats....142
Heated Seat Precautions....142
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off....143
Heating
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....126
High Current Fuse Box....385
Accessing the High Current Fuse Box....385
Identifying the Fuses in the High Current Fuse Box....385
Locating the High Current Fuse Box....385
High Voltage Battery Gauge - Electric Motor....106
High Voltage Battery....207
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting....208
High Voltage Battery Precautions....207
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting....208
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps....208
Hill Start Assist....263
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting....263
Hill Start Assist Precautions....263
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting....263
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages....263
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....388
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work....288
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work....177
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work....248
How Does Auto Hold Work....264



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

How Does Blind Spot Information System Work....317
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work....322
How Does Driver Alert Work....331
How Does Driver Identification Work....505
How Does Eco Coach Work....300
How Does Emergency Assistance Work....52
How Does Hill Start Assist Work....263
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work....300
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work....326
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work....325
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work....259
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work....333
How Does Stability Control Work....268
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work....279
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work....196
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work....305
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work....308
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work....146
How Does the Speed Limiter Work....303
How Does Traction Control Work....266
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work....335
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work....353
How Does Trip Summary Work....300
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work....337
How Do the Front Airbags Work....47
How Do the Side Airbags Work....47
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work....48
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics....177
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information....177

## I

Identifying Fuse Types....386
Ignition Switch....163
Inflating the Tires....431
Information On Demand Screen....491
Inspecting the Tire for Damage....440
Instrument Cluster Display....112
Personalized Settings....112
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu....112
Instrument Cluster Indicators....110
Instrument Cluster....104
Fuel Gauge - 2.0L EcoBlue....105
Instrument Cluster Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue....104
Instrument Cluster Overview - Electric Motor....105
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....107
Instrument Panel - LHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....29
Instrument Panel - LHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 4....31
Instrument Panel - RHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....33
Instrument Panel - RHD, Vehicles With: SYNC 4....32
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control....294
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance....295
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work....294
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts....295
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators....295
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations....294
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions....294
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off....295
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....307



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter....305
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions....305
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....307
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions....307
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit....304
Interior Bulbs....420
Changing a Front Interior Lamp Bulb....421
Changing a Map Reading Lamp Bulb....421
Changing a Vanity Mirror Lamp Bulb....422
Interior Bulb Specification Chart....420
Interior Fuse Box....376
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box....376
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box....377
Interior Lamp Function....98
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off....98
What Is the Interior Lamp Function....98
Interior Lighting....97
Cargo Lamps - Van....98
Interior Lamp Function....98
Interior Mirror....101
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....101
Interior Mirror Precautions....101
Introduction....19

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....359
Jump Starting Precautions....359
Jump Starting the Vehicle....360
Preparing the Vehicle....360

## K

Keyless Entry....79
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....80
Keyless Entry Limitations....79
Keyless Entry Settings....79
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....80
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions....80
Keys and Remote Controls....55
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....59
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....59
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages....59

## L

Lane Keeping System Indicators....311
Lane Keeping System....308
Aid Mode....310
Alert and Aid Mode....311
Alert Mode....310
Blind Spot Assist....311
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage....313
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....316
Lane Keeping System Limitations....309
Lane Keeping System Precautions....308
Lane Keeping System Settings....309
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....316
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages....316
Live Traffic....502
Switching Live Traffic On and Off....502
What Is Live Traffic....502
Load Bed....341
Accessing the Load Bed....341
Load Bed Step....343
Load Bed Precautions....341
Load Bed Step....343
Accessing the Foot Treadplate....343
Accessing the Side Panel Step....343
Accessing the Tailgate Step....344
Load Carrying....339
Roof Rack....339
Load Carrying Precautions....339
Loading Your Trailer....347
Local Hazard Information....302



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Local Hazard Information Precautions....302
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras....279
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors....318
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir....249
Locating the Charge Port....220
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors....323
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel....190
Locating the Power Outlets....150
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control....327
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control....327
Locating the Rear View Camera....276
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....442
Locating the USB Ports....148
Locating Your Vehicle....56
Locking the Steering Wheel....86

# M

Maintenance....388
12V Battery....400
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - 2.0L EcoBlue....404
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Electric Motor....405
Coolant....396
Engine Oil - 2.0L EcoBlue....394
Exterior Bulbs....408
Interior Bulbs....420
Maintenance Precautions....388
Making and Receiving a Phone Call....496
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror....101
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....257
Manual Seats....137
Adjusting the Head Restraint....137
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....139
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....145
Adjusting the Seat Cushion....139
Adjusting the Seat Height....139
Folding the Seat Armrest....139
Head Restraint Components....137
Installing the Head Restraint....138
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....138
Removing the Head Restraint....138
Swiveling the Seat....140
Manual Transmission....241
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting....242
Manual Transmission Precautions....241
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators....241
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting....242
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions....242
Mobile Communications Equipment....509
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....26
Muting the Audio....485
MyKey Settings....61
Configurable MyKey Settings....61
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings....61
MyKey – Troubleshooting....63
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions....65
MyKey – Information Messages....63
MyKey™....61
MyKey Settings....61
MyKey – Troubleshooting....63

# N

Navigation Map Updates....502
Navigation....502
Adjusting the Map....502
Live Traffic....502
Route Guidance....503
Setting a Destination....502
Waypoints....503

# O

Opening and Closing the Flip Key....55
Opening and Closing the Hood....388



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Opening and Closing the Rear Quarter Windows....100
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows....100
Opening and Closing the Windows....99
Opening the Sliding Door....72
Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle....72
Opening the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle....72
Opening the Sliding Door With the Remote Control....75
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....69
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....69
Opening the Rear Doors From Inside Your Vehicle in an Emergency....69
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking....69
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....67
Opening and Closing the Doors....68
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade....67
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control....67
Overhead Storage....159
Locating the Overhead Storage....159
Overhead Storage Load Capacities....159
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist....260
Overriding the Set Speed....293

# P

Parking Aid Indicators....273
Parking Aid Precautions....269
Parking Aids....269
Front Parking Aid....271
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting....273
Rear Parking Aid....270
Side Parking Aid....272
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting....273
Parking Aids – Information Messages....273
Parking Brake Audible Warning....252
Parking Brake....252
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....252
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....252
Parking Brake – Information Messages....252
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps....252
Parking Heater Limitations....131
Parking Heater....131
Parking Heater Settings....131
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting....135
Parking Heater Precautions....131
Parking Heater Remote Control Indicators....133
Parking Heater Settings....131
Setting the Parking Heater Timer....131
Switching Continue Heat On....131
Parking Heater – Troubleshooting....135
Parking Heater – Information Messages....135
Passenger Airbag Indicators....49
Passive Anti-Theft System....81
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System....81
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System....81
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System....81
Pedestrian Alert System....51
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting....51
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting....51
Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages....51
Performing a Master Reset....507
Personalized Settings....112
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language....112
Changing the Measurement Unit....113
Changing the Temperature Unit....113
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit....113
Switching the Instrument Cluster Display Audible Warnings On and Off....113
Phone Menu....494
Phone....494
Phone Precautions....494
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®....499
Playing Media Using the USB Port - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....148
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source....484



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Post-Crash Alert System.....363
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....363
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....364
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....364
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....363
Post Impact Braking.....364
How Does Post Impact Braking Work.....364
Overriding Post Impact Braking.....364
Post Impact Braking Indicators.....364
Post Impact Braking Limitations.....364
Powering Off.....174
Power Outlet Indicators.....151
Power Outlet Limitations.....155
Power Outlet.....150
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting.....153
Power Outlet Precautions.....150
Power Outlet – Troubleshooting.....153
Power Outlet – Frequently Asked Questions.....154
Power Outlet – Information Messages.....153
Power Running Board Precautions.....85
Power Running Board Settings.....85
Power Running Boards.....85
Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting.....85
Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting.....85
Power Running Boards – Frequently Asked Questions.....85
Power Seats.....140
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....140
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....142
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....142
Adjusting the Seat Height.....142
Head Restraint Components.....140
Installing the Head Restraint.....141
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....141
Removing the Head Restraint.....141
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....326
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....326
Pre-Collision Assist.....325
Automatic Emergency Braking.....328
Distance Alert.....328
Distance Indication.....328
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....329
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....329
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....329
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....329
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery.....207
Programming a MyKey.....62
Programming the Remote Control.....59
Protecting the Environment.....28
Puncture
See: Changing a Flat Tire - 2.0L EcoBlue.....448
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Electric Motor.....457
Push Button Ignition Switch.....164

# R

REACH.....508
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....345
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....345
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load Capacities.....345
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Precautions.....345
Rear Cargo Area.....345
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....345
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....147
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....147
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....146
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....146
Rear Occupant Alert System.....146
Rear Overhead Storage.....161
Locating the Rear Overhead Storage.....161



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Rear Overhead Storage Load Capacities....161
Rear Parking Aid....270
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors....270
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings....271
Rear Parking Aid Limitations....270
What is the Rear Parking Aid....270
Rear Passenger Climate Control....129
Rear Seats....144
Manual Seats....144
Rear View Camera Guide Lines....276
Rear View Camera Limitations....275
Rear View Camera Precautions....275
Rear View Camera....275
Rear View Camera Settings....277
Rear View Camera Settings....277
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off....277
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off....277
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out....277
Recovery Towing....365
Accessing the Front Towing Point....365
Accessing the Rear Towing Point....365
Installing the Towing Eye....366
Locating the Towing Eye....366
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery....208
Refueling....192
Refueling System Overview....192
Refueling Your Vehicle....192
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge....257
Releasing the Parking Brake....252
Remote Control Limitations....55
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - 2.0L EcoBlue....117
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle - Electric Motor....118
Remote Start Limitations - 2.0L EcoBlue....117
Remote Start Limitations - Electric Motor....117
Remote Start....117
Remote Start Settings....118
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....55
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....427
Replacement Parts Recommendation....509
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....59
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades....88
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....69
Resetting Driver Alert....331
Resetting Ground Fault Detection....152
Resetting the Individual Trip Values....116
Resetting the Power Sliding Door....76
Resetting the Trip Computer....116
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System....446
Restarting the Engine....178
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off....174
Resuming the Set Speed Limit....303
Resuming the Set Speed....287
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators....260
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions....259
Reverse Braking Assist....259
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting....261
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting....261
Reverse Braking Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....262
Reverse Braking Assist – Information Messages....261
Rollover Warning....508
Roof Rack....339
Roof Rack Load Capacities....340
Roof Rack Precautions....339
Route Guidance....503
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume....503
Canceling Route Guidance....503
Repeating an Instruction....503
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....354



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Running Out of Fuel....190
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....191
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....190

# S

Scrolling Through Menu Items - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....485
Scrolling Through Menu Items - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....485
Seatbelt Precautions....44
Seatbelt Reminder....45
Checking Seatbelt Status....45
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings....45
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators....45
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off....45
Seatbelts....44
Seatbelt Reminder....45
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting....46
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting....46
Seatbelts – Information Messages....46
Security....81
Anti-Theft Alarm System....81
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....82
Passive Anti-Theft System....81
Security – Troubleshooting....83
Security – Troubleshooting....83
Security – Frequently Asked Questions....84
Security – Information Messages....83
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....298
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles Without: SYNC....298
Selecting a Menu Item - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....486
Selecting a Menu Item - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....486
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....484
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....484
Selecting the Audio Source - Vehicles Without: SYNC....484
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption....204
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System....201
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank....202
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting....204
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting....204
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions....206
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages....205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps....204
Sending and Receiving a Text Message....497
Service Data....25
Setting a Destination....502
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest....503
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination....503
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination....503
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination....503
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen....502
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen....502
Setting a Memory Preset....485
Settings Data....26
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap....292
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed....291
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....120
Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences....232



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....487
Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....487
Setting the Clock and Date - Vehicles Without: SYNC....487
Setting the Cruise Control Speed....286
Setting the High Voltage Battery Reserve Limit....152
Setting the Speed Limit....303
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance....334
Setting the Temperature....121
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance....336
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning....336
Setting the Wake Word....492
Shifting Into Reverse....241
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission....244
Side Parking Aid....272
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors....272
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings....273
Side Parking Aid Limitations....272
What is the Side Parking Aid....272
Signing In as a Driver....505
Sitting in the Correct Position....136
Sliding Door Precautions....72
Sliding Door....72
Closing the Sliding Door....72
Opening the Sliding Door....72
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting....77
Sliding Door – Troubleshooting....77
Sliding Door – Frequently Asked Questions....78
Sliding Door – Information Messages....77
Sounding the Panic Alarm....56
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....286
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....304
Speed Limiter Indicators....304
Speed Limiter Precautions....303
Speed Limiter....303
Speedometer....105
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators....333
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations....333
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions....333
Speed Sign Recognition....333
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....334
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....334
Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages....334
Stability Control Indicator....268
Stability Control....268
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....163
Starting and Powering Off Precautions....174
Starting and Powering Off....174
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting....176
Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....175
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting....176
Starting and Powering Off – Frequently Asked Questions....176
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions....163
Starting and Stopping the Engine....163
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....169
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....170
Starting the Engine....164
Stopping the Engine....167
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....170
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions....172
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages....171
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps....170
Starting the Engine....164
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it....166
Starting a Diesel Engine....164
Starting a Flooded Engine....166

Starting the Vehicle....174
Status Bar....490
Steering Wheel....29
Stopping the Engine....178
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....168
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....167
Stopping the Sliding Door Movement....76
Storage....159
Bottle Holders....159
Cup Holders....159
Device Holder....161
Front Door Storage....160
Overhead Storage....159
Rear Overhead Storage....161
Under Seat Storage....160
Storing a First Aid Kit....371
Storing a Warning Triangle....371
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....282
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC....282
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off....291
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off....119
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus/Van....97
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus....97
Switching Android Auto On and Off....501
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off....501
Switching Auto Hold On and Off....264
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off....182
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....178
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....178
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off....318
Switching Climate Control On and Off....119
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off....323
Switching Cruise Control On and Off....286
Switching Defrost On and Off....119
Switching Driver Alert On and Off....331
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off....301
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control....294
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter....307
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off....120
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....119
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....270
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC....270
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off....146
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....119
Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off....260
Switching Stability Control On and Off....268
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off....498
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off....281
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View....281
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off....484
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off....130
Switching the Display On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5, Vehicles Without: SYNC....488
Switching the Display On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....489
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus/Van....97
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off....359

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....120
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....120
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....120
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....305
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....305
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....309
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....309
Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control.....132
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....49
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off - Bus.....97
Switching the Rear Power Outlet On and Off.....151
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....303
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4.....266
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....266
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....337
Symbols Glossary.....20
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....20

# T

Tachometer - 2.0L EcoBlue.....105
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....466
Temporary Neutral Mode - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....244
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....244
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....245
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....244
What Is Temporary Neutral Mode.....244
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....508
Tire Care.....431
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....445
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....445
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....445
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....446
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....446
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....447
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....446
Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus.....438
Tire Pressure Specifications - Van.....431
Tire Rotation.....440
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....442
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....442
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....442
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....347
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....346
Towing a Trailer.....346
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....348
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....348
Tow Bar Dimensions.....349
Towing Weight Capacities.....348
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....368
Towing Your Vehicle.....368
Traction Control Indicator.....266
Traction Control.....266
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....267
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....267
Traction Control – Information Messages.....267
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....267
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....335
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations.....335
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions.....335



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Traffic Sign Recognition.....335
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....336
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....336
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....336
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....353
Trailer Sway Control.....353
Trailer Towing Hints.....348
Trailer Towing Navigation.....504
Trip Computer.....116
Trip Data.....116
Trip Summary.....301
How Does Trip Summary Work.....301
Viewing the Trip Summary.....301
Tyre Pressure Specifications
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - Bus.....438
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - Van.....431

# U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....372
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....372
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....373
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, AWD/RWD/LHD.....389
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, AWD/RWD/RHD.....391
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, FWD/LHD.....390
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue, FWD/RHD.....392
Under Hood Overview - Electric Motor.....393
Under Seat Storage.....160
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....160
Updating the Vehicle Systems Wirelessly.....506
USB Ports.....148
Using Auto Hold.....264
Using FordPass and Charging.....237
Using Keyless Entry.....80
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....63
Using Snow Chains.....429
Using Summer Tires.....429
Using the Cigar Lighter.....158
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....112
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....443
Using This Publication.....19
Using Winter Tires.....429

# V

Vehicle Care.....424
Cleaning the Exterior.....424
Cleaning the Interior.....425
Vehicle Charging Status.....115
Vehicle Dimensions - Bus/Kombi/Van.....466
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab/Chassis Double Cab.....467
Vehicle Identification Number.....476
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....476
Vehicle Identification Plate.....476
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....476
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....476
Vehicle Identification.....476
Vehicle Identification Number.....476
Vehicle Identification Plate.....476
Vehicle Power Down Timer - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....175
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer Work.....175
Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....175
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer On and Off.....175
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....175
Vehicle Range Display - Electric Motor.....106
Vehicle System Updates.....506
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....483
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....483



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....481
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....483
Ventilation
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....119
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....126
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level.....300
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....445
Viewing the Trip Summary.....300
Visual Search.....29
Voice Interaction Examples.....492
Voice Interaction.....492

# W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....19
Washer Fluid Specification.....473
Washers.....88
Adding Washer Fluid.....89
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....88
Using the Windshield Washer.....88
Washer Precautions.....88
Washers
See: Wipers and Washers.....87
Waxing Your Vehicle.....428
Waypoints.....503
Adding a Waypoint.....503
Editing Waypoints.....503
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....109
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....107
What is AC Charging.....209
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....478
What Is Active Park Assist.....282
What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....177
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....178
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....317
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....322
What Is Cruise Control.....286
What is DC Charging.....209
What Is Drive Mode Control.....298
What Is Driver Alert.....331
What Is Eco Coach.....300
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....301
What Is Emergency Assistance.....52
What Is Hill Start Assist.....263
What Is Keyless Entry.....79
What Is Local Hazard Information.....302
What Is MyKey.....61
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....325
What Is Remote Start.....117
What Is Reverse Braking Assist.....259
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....333
What Is Stability Control.....268
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....279
What Is the Auxiliary Heater.....130
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....196
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....256
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....207
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....305
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....308
What Is the Parking Heater.....131
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....51
What Is the Power Outlet.....150
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....146
What Is the Rear View Camera.....275
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....201
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....445
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....442
What Is the Trip Summary.....115
What Is Traction Control.....266
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....335
What is Voice Interaction.....492
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....337
Wheel and Tire Information.....429
Wheel Nuts.....464



Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

Wi Fi
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....482
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password - Vehicles Without: SYNC....482
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....479
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 4....481
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles Without: SYNC....481
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot....481
Window Bounce-Back....99
Overriding Window Bounce-Back....99
Resetting Window Bounce-Back....100
What Is Window Bounce-Back....99
Windows....99
Window Bounce-Back....99
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting....89
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions....89
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps....89
Wipers and Washers....87
Autowipers....87
Washers....88
Wipers....87
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting....89
Wipers....87
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off....87
Wiper Precautions....87
Wrong Way Alert Limitations....337
Wrong Way Alert Precautions....337
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting....338
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages....338
Wrong Way Alert....337
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting....338

Transit (TTS) Vehicles Built From: 17-01-2022, CG3796en enGBR, Edition date: 202110, First-Printing

CG3796en, Edition date: 202110